

DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY

HEADQUARTERS UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS 3000 MARINE CORPS PENTAGON WASHINGTON, D.C. 20350-3000

> NAVMC 3500.70A C 469

2 9 SEP 2011

NAVMC 3500.70A

From: Commandant of the Marine Corps

To:

Distribution List

Subj: MOUNTAIN WARFARE OPERATIONS (MWO) TRAINING AND READINESS (T&R) MANUAL

Ref:

- (a) MCO P3500.72A
- (b) MCO 1553.3B
- (c) MCO 3400.3F
- (d) MCO 3500.27B W/Erratum
- (e) MCRP 3-0A
- (f) MCRP 3-0B
- (q) MCO 1553.2B
- 1. Purpose. Per reference (a), this Manual establishes training standards, regulations and practices regarding the training of Marines and assigned Navy personnel for operations in mountain and cold weather environments. This Manual identifies core plus training requirements for MWO and Mountain Warfare Instructors.
- 2. Cancellation. NAVMC 3500.70

3. Scope

- a. The core capability Mission Essential Task List (METL) in this Manual is used in Defense Readiness Reporting System (DRRS) for assessment and reporting of unit readiness. Units achieve training readiness for reporting in DRRS by gaining and sustaining proficiency in the training events in this Manual at both collective unit and individual levels.
- b. Training events in this Manual will be used to standardize unittraining, focus on Mission Essential Tasks (METs) and establish a framework for assessment of unit and individual training readiness throughout the community. This T&R Manual includes unit and individual training standards for use by unit commanders and formal schools for the development of training plans, curricula and records of training accomplished in order to establish a framework for identifying training achievements, training gaps and objective assessments of readiness associated with the training of Marines.
- c. Per reference (b), commanders will conduct an internal assessment of . the unit's ability to execute each MET and develop long, mid, and short-range training plans to sustain proficiency in each MET. Training plans will incorporate these events to standardize training and provide objective assessment of progress toward attaining combat readiness. Commanders will keep records at the unit and individual levels to record training achievements, identify training gaps and document objective assessments of readiness associated with training Marines. Commanders will use reference (c) to incorporate nuclear, biological and chemical defense training into

DISTRIBUTION STATEMENT A: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

training plans and reference (d) to integrate operational risk management. References (e) and (f) provide amplifying information for effective planning and management of training within the unit.

- d. Formal school and training detachment commanders will use references (a) and (g) to ensure programs of instruction meet skill-training requirements established in this Manual and provide career-progression training in the events designated for initial training in the formal school environment.
- 4. <u>Information</u>. Commanding General (CG), Training and Education Command (TECOM) will update this T&R Manual as necessary to provide current, relevant training standards to commanders and to ensure a current core capabilities METL is available for use in DRRS by the Marine Corps logisticians. All questions pertaining to the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program and Unit Training Management should be directed to: CG, TECOM (Ground Training Division C 469), 1019 Elliot Road, Quantico, VA 22134.
- 5. Command. This Manual is applicable to the Marine Corps Total Force.

6. Certification. Reviewed and approved this date.

R. C. FOX

By direction of

Distribution: PCN 10031979100

Copy to: 7000260 (2)

8145001 (1)

LOCATOR SHEET

Subj:	MOUNTAIN	WARFARE	OPERATIONS	(MWO)	TRAINING	AND	READINESS	5 (T&R)	MANUAL
Locatio	on:								
		(Indicat	e location	(s) of	copy(ies)	of	this Manu	ıal.)	

RECORD OF CHANGES

Log completed change action as indicated

Change	Date of	Date	Signature of Person Incorporating Change
Number	Change	Entered	Incorporating Change
		1	
	-		
			į
•			

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CH	ΑI	ΥI	ER																	
1																				OVERVIEW
2			٠	٠									•				٠	•		MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX
3						•														COLLECTIVE TRAINING
4	•		•	•	٠	•	•	٠	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	MOUNTAIN WARFARE OPERATIONS INDIVIDUAL EVENTS
5	•			•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	٠			•	•		MOUNTAIN WARFARE INSTRUCTOR INDIVIDUAL EVENTS
AP	PE	NI	OIC	CES	<u> </u>															
A	•		•	•			٠			•	•		٠					٠		ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS
В				•		•			•											TERMS AND DEFINITIONS
C	•								•	•		•	•					•		REFERENCES
D													٠							CLASS V(W) REQUIRED FOR MWO TRAINING
Ε				•								٠						٠		GLOSSARY OF SPECIALIZED TERMS
F	-	•					•													FUNCTIONAL AREA MATRIX
G										•										CLIMBING CLASSIFICATION AND GRADES

CHAPTER 1

OVERVIEW

							PA	RAGRAPH	PAGE
INTRODUCTION		•	:	•			٠	1000	1-2
UNIT TRAINING							•	1001	1-2
UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT		•					•	1002	1-3
SUSTAINMENT AND EVALUATION OF TRAINING.							•	1003	1-3
ORGANIZATION		٠		•				1004	1-4
T&R EVENT CODING								1005	1-5
COMBAT READINESS PERCENTAGE							•	1006	1-5
EVALUATION-CODED (E-CODED) EVENTS	•. •						•	1007	1-6
CRP CALCULATION							•	1008	1-6
T&R EVENT COMPOSITION								1009	1-7
CBRN TRAINING						•		1010	1-10
NIGHT TRAINING								1011	1-10
OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM)						٠		1012	1-10
APPLICATION OF SIMULATION							•	1013	1-11
MARINE CORPS GROUND T&R PROGRAM								1014	1-11

CHAPTER 1

OVERVIEW

1000. INTRODUCTION

- 1. The T&R Program is the Corps' primary tool for planning, conducting and evaluating training and assessing training readiness. Subject Matter Experts (SMEs) from the operating forces developed core capability Mission Essential Task Lists (METLs) for ground communities derived from the Marine Corps Task List (MCTL). T&R Manuals are built around these METLs and all events contained in T&R Manuals relate directly to this METL. This comprehensive T&R Program will help to ensure the Marine Corps continues to improve its combat readiness by training more efficiently and effectively. Ultimately, this will enhance the Marine Corps' ability to accomplish real-world missions.
- 2. The T&R Manual contains the individual and collective training requirements to prepare units to accomplish their combat mission. The T&R Manual is not intended to be an encyclopedia that contains every minute detail of how to accomplish training. Instead, it identifies the minimum standards that Marines must be able to perform in combat. The T&R Manual is a fundamental tool for commanders to build and maintain unit combat readiness. Using this tool, leaders can construct and execute an effective training plan that supports the unit's METL. More detailed information on the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program is found in reference (a).
- 3. The T&R Manual is designed for use by curriculum developers to create courses of instruction and unit commanders to determine predeployment training requirements in preparation for training. This directive focuses on individual and collective tasks performed by OPFOR units and supervised by personnel in the performance of unit Mission Essential Tasks (METs).

1001. UNIT TRAINING

1. The training of Marines to perform as an integrated unit in combat lies at the heart of the T&R program. Unit and individual readiness are directly related. Individual training and the mastery of individual core skills serve as the building blocks for unit combat readiness. A Marine's ability to perform critical skills required in combat is essential. However, it is not necessary to have all individuals within a unit fully trained in order for that organization to accomplish its assigned tasks. Manpower shortfalls, temporary assignments, leave, or other factors outside the commander's control, often affect the ability to conduct individual training. During these periods, unit readiness is enhanced if emphasis is placed on the individual training of Marines on-hand. Subsequently, these Marines will be mission ready and capable of executing as part of a team when the full complement of personnel is available.

- 2. Commanders will ensure that all tactical training is focused on their combat mission. The T&R Manual is a tool to help develop the unit's training plan. In most cases, unit training should focus on achieving unit proficiency in the core capabilities METL. However, commanders will adjust their training focus to support METLs associated with a major OPLAN/CONPLAN or named operation as designated by their higher commander and reported accordingly in the Defense Readiness Reporting System (DRRS). Tactical training will support the METL in use by the commander and be tailored to meet T&R standards. Commanders at all levels are responsible for effective combat training. The conduct of training in a professional manner consistent with Marine Corps standards cannot be over emphasized.
- 3. Commanders will provide personnel the opportunity to attend formal and operational level courses of instruction as required by this Manual. Attendance at all formal courses must enhance the warfighting capabilities of the unit as determined by the unit commander.

1002. UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT

- 1. Unit Training Management (UTM) is the application of the Systems Approach to Training (SAT) and the Marine Corps Training Principles. This is accomplished in a manner that maximizes training results and focuses the training priorities of the unit in preparation for the conduct of its wartime mission.
- 2. UTM techniques, described in references (b) and (e), provide commanders with the requisite tools and techniques to analyze, design, develop, implement, and evaluate the training of their unit. The Marine Corps Training Principles, explained in reference (b), provide sound and proven direction and are flexible enough to accommodate the demands of local conditions. These principles are not inclusive, nor do they guarantee success. They are guides that commanders can use to manage unit-training programs. The Marine Corps training principles are:
 - Train as you fight
 - Make commanders responsible for training
 - Use standards-based training
 - Use performance-oriented training
 - Use mission-oriented training
 - Train the MAGTF to fight as a combined arms team
 - Train to sustain proficiency
 - Train to challenge
- 3. To maintain an efficient and effective training program, leaders at every level must understand and implement UTM. Guidance for UTM and the process for establishing effective programs are contained in references (a) through (g).

1003. SUSTAINMENT AND EVALUATION OF TRAINING

1. The evaluation of training is necessary to properly prepare Marines for combat. Evaluations are either formal or informal, and performed by members

of the unit (internal evaluation) or from an external command (external evaluation).

- 2. Marines are expected to maintain proficiency in the training events for their MOS at the appropriate grade or billet to which assigned. Leaders are responsible for recording the training achievements of their Marines. Whether it involves individual or collective training events, they must ensure proficiency is sustained by requiring retraining of each event at or before expiration of the designated sustainment interval. Performance of the training event, however, is not sufficient to ensure combat readiness. Leaders at all levels must evaluate the performance of their Marines and the unit as they complete training events, and only record successful accomplishment of training based upon the evaluation. The goal of evaluation is to ensure that correct methods are employed to achieve the desired standard, or the Marines understand how they need to improve in order to attain the standard. Leaders must determine whether credit for completing a training event is recorded if the standard was not achieved. While successful accomplishment is desired, debriefing of errors can result in successful learning that will allow ethical recording of training event completion. Evaluation is a continuous process that is integral to training management and is conducted by leaders at every level and during all phases of planning and the conduct of training. To ensure training is efficient and effective, evaluation is an integral part of the training plan. Ultimately, leaders remain responsible for determining if the training was effective.
- 3. The purpose of formal and informal evaluation is to provide commanders with a process to determine a unit's/Marine's proficiency in the tasks that must be performed in combat. Informal evaluations are conducted during every training evolution. Formal evaluations are often scenario-based, focused on the unit's METs, based on collective training standards, and usually conducted during higher-level collective events. References (a) and (f) provide further guidance on the conduct of informal and formal evaluations using the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program.

1004. ORGANIZATION

- 1. T&R Manuals are organized in one of two methods: unit-based or community-based. Unit-based T&R Manuals are written to support a type of unit (Infantry, Artillery, Tanks, etc.) and contain both collective and individual training standards. Community-based are written to support an Occupational Field, a group of related Military Occupational Specialties (MOSs), or billets within an organization (EOD, NBC, Intel, etc.), and can contain both collective and individual training standards. T&R Manuals are comprised of chapters that contain unit METs, collective training standards (CTS), and individual training standards (ITS) for each MOS, billet, etc.
- 2. The Mountain Warfare Operations T&R Manual is a unit-based manual comprised of 5 chapters. Chapter 2 lists the Core Capability METs and their related collective events. Chapter 3 contains the collective events. Chapters 4 and 5 contain individual events.

1005. T&R EVENT CODING

- 1. T&R events are coded for ease of reference. Each event has up-to a 4-4-4-digit identifier. The first up-to four digits are referred to as a "community" and represent the unit type or occupation (MW or MWI). The second up-to four digits represent the functional or duty area (AVAL, CLEQ, MOVE, HRST, etc.). The last four digits represent the level and sequence of the event.
- 2. The T&R levels are illustrated in Figure 1. An example of the T&R coding used in this Manual is shown in Figure 2.

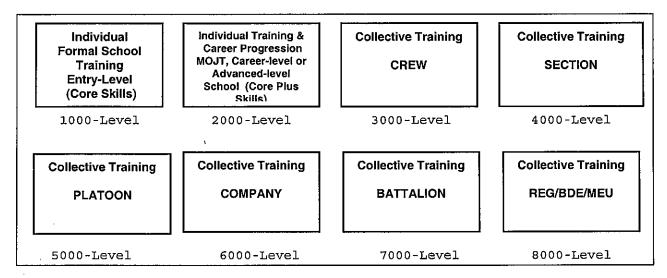


Figure 1: T&R Event Levels

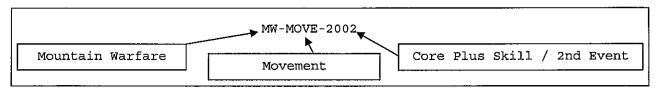


Figure 2: T&R Event Coding

1006. COMBAT READINESS PERCENTAGE

- 1. The Marine Corps Ground T&R Program includes processes to assess readiness of units and individual Marines. Every unit in the Marine Corps maintains a basic level of readiness based on the training and experience of the Marines in the unit. Even units that never trained together are capable of accomplishing some portion of their missions. Combat readiness assessment does not associate a quantitative value for this baseline of readiness, but uses a "Combat Readiness Percentage", as a method to provide a concise descriptor of the recent training accomplishments of units and Marines.
- 2. Combat Readiness Percentage (CRP) is the percentage of required training events that a unit or Marine accomplishes within specified sustainment intervals.

- 3. In unit-based T&R Manuals, unit combat readiness is assessed as a percentage of the successfully completed and current (within sustainment interval) key training events called "Evaluation-Coded" (E-Coded) Events. E-Coded Events and unit CRP calculation are described in follow-on paragraphs. CRP achieved through the completion of E-Coded Events is directly relevant to readiness assessment in DRRS.
- 4. Individual combat readiness, in both unit-based and community-based T&R Manuals, is assessed as the percentage of required individual events in which a Marine is current. This translates as the percentage of training events for his/her MOS and grade (or billet) that the Marine successfully completes within the directed sustainment interval. Individual skills are developed through a combination of 1000-level training (entry-level formal school courses), individual on-the-job training in 2000-level events, and follow-on formal school training. Skill proficiency is maintained by retraining in each event per the specified sustainment interval.

1007. EVALUATION-CODED (E-CODED) EVENTS

- 1. Unit-type T&R Manuals can contain numerous unit events, some for the whole unit and others for integral parts that serve as building blocks for training. To simplify training management and readiness assessment, only collective events that are critical components of a mission essential task (MET), or key indicators of a unit's readiness, are used to generate CRP for a MET. These critical or key events are designated in the T&R Manual as Evaluation-Coded (E-Coded) events. Formal evaluation of unit performance in these events is recommended because of their value in assessing combat readiness. Only E-Coded events are used to calculate CRP for each MET.
- 2. The use of a METL-based training program allows the commander discretion in training. This makes the T&R Manual a training tool rather than a prescriptive checklist.

1008. CRP CALCULATION

- 1. Collective training begins at the 3000-level (team, crew or equivalent). Unit training plans are designed to accomplish the events that support the unit METL while simultaneously sustaining proficiency in individual core skills. Using the battalion-based (unit) model, the battalion (7000-level) has collective events that directly support a MET on the METL. These collective events are E-Coded and the only events that contribute to unit CRP. This is done to assist commanders in prioritizing the training toward the METL, taking into account resource, time, and personnel constraints.
- 2. Unit CRP increases after the completion of E-Coded events. The number of E-Coded events for the MET determines the value of each E-Coded event. For example, if there are 4 E-Coded events for a MET, each is worth 25% of MET CRP. MET CRP is calculated by adding the percentage of each completed and current (within sustainment interval) E-Coded training event. The percentage for each MET is calculated the same way and all are added together and divided by the number of METS to determine unit CRP. For ease of calculation, we will say that each MET has 4 E-Coded events, each contributing 25% towards the completion of the MET. If the unit has

completed and is current on three of the four E-Coded events for a given MET, then they have completed 75% of the MET. The CRP for each MET is added together and divided by the number of METS to get unit CRP; unit CRP is the average of MET CRP.

For Example:

MET 1: 75% complete (3 of 4 E-Coded events trained)
MET 2: 100% complete (6 of 6 E-Coded events trained)
MET 3: 25% complete (1 of 4 E-Coded events trained)
MET 4: 50% complete (2 of 4 E-Coded events trained)
MET 5: 75% complete (3 of 4 E-Coded events trained)

To get unit CRP, simply add the CRP for each MET and divide by the number of METS:

MET CRP: 75 + 100 + 25 + 50 + 75 = 325

Unit CRP: 325 (total MET CRP)/5 (total number of METS) = 65%

1009 T&R EVENT COMPOSITION

- 1. This section explains each of the components of a T&R event. These items are included in all events in each T&R Manual.
- a. <u>Event Code</u> (see Sect 1006). The event code is a 4-4-4 character set. For individual training events, the first 4 characters indicate the occupational function. The second 4 characters indicate functional area (TAC, CBTS, VOPS, etc.). The third 4 characters are simply a numerical designator for the event.
 - b. Event Title. The event title is the name of the event.
- c. $\underline{\text{E-Coded}}$. This is a "yes/no" category to indicate whether or not the event is $\underline{\text{E-Coded}}$. If yes, the event contributes toward the CRP of the associated MET. The value of each $\underline{\text{E-Coded}}$ event is based on number of $\underline{\text{E-Coded}}$ events for that MET. Refer to paragraph 1008 for detailed explanation of $\underline{\text{E-Coded}}$ events.
- d. <u>Supported MET(s)</u>. List all METs that are supported by the training event.
- e. <u>Sustainment Interval</u>. This is the period, expressed in number of months, between evaluation or retraining requirements. Skills and capabilities acquired through the accomplishment of training events are refreshed at pre-determined intervals. It is essential that these intervals are adhered to in order to ensure Marines maintain proficiency.
- f. <u>Billet</u>. Individual training events may contain a list of billets within the community that are responsible for performing that event. This ensures that the billet's expected tasks are clearly articulated and a Marine's readiness to perform in that billet is measured.

- g. Grade. Each individual training event will list the rank(s) at which Marines are required to learn and sustain the training event.
- h. <u>Initial Training Setting</u>. For Individual T&R Events only, this specifies the location for initial instruction of the training event in one of three categories (formal school, managed on-the-job training, distance learning). Regardless of the specified Initial Training Setting, any T&R event may be introduced and evaluated during managed on-the-job training.
- (1) "FORMAL" When the Initial Training Setting of an event is identified as "FORMAL" (formal school), the appropriate formal school or training detachment is required to provide initial training in the event. Conversely, formal schools and training detachments are not authorized to provide training in events designated as Initial Training Setting "MOJT" or "DL." Since the duration of formal school training must be constrained to optimize Operating Forces' manning, this element provides the mechanism for Operating Forces' prioritization of training requirements for both entry-level (1000-level) and career-level (2000-level) T&R Events. For formal schools and training detachments, this element defines the requirements for content of courses.
- (2) "DL" Identifies the training event as a candidate for initial training via a Distance Learning product (correspondence course or MarineNet course).
- (3) "MOJT" Events specified for Managed On-the-Job Training are to be introduced to Marines, and evaluated, as part of training within a unit by supervisory personnel.
- i. <u>Event Description</u>. Provide a description of the event purpose, objectives, goals, and requirements. It is a general description of an action requiring learned skills and knowledge (e.g. Camouflage the M1A1 Tank).
- j. <u>Condition</u>. Describe the condition(s), under which tasks are performed. Conditions are based on a "real world" operational environment. They indicate what is provided (equipment, materials, manuals, aids, etc.), environmental constraints, conditions under which the task is performed, and any specific cues or indicators to which the performer must respond. When resources or safety requirements limit the conditions, this is stated.
- k. <u>Standard</u>. The standard indicates the basis for judging effectiveness of the performance. It consists of a carefully worded statement that identifies the proficiency level expected when the task is performed. The standard provides the minimum acceptable performance parameters and is strictly adhered to. The standard for collective events is general, describing the desired end-state or purpose of the event. While the standard for individual events specifically describe to what proficiency level in terms of accuracy, speed, sequencing, quality of performance, adherence to procedural guidelines, etc., the event is accomplished.
- 1. Event Components. Describe the actions composing the event and help the user determine what must be accomplished and to properly plan for the event.

- m. <u>Prerequisite Events</u>. Prerequisites are academic training or other T&R events that must be completed prior to attempting the task. They are lower-level events or tasks that give the individual/unit the skills required to accomplish the event. They can also be planning steps, administrative requirements, or specific parameters that build toward mission accomplishment.
- n. <u>Chained Events</u>. Collective T&R events are supported by lower-level collective and individual T&R events. This enables unit leaders to effectively identify subordinate T&R events that ultimately support specific mission essential tasks. When the accomplishment of any upper-level events, by their nature, result in the performance of certain subordinate and related events, the events are "chained." The completion of chained events will update sustainment interval credit (and CRP for E-Coded events) for the related subordinate level events.
- o. <u>Related Events</u>. Provide a list of all Individual Training Standards that support the event.
- p. <u>References</u>. The training references are utilized to determine task performance steps, grading criteria, and ensure standardization of training procedures. They assist the trainee in satisfying the performance standards, or the trainer in evaluating the effectiveness of task completion. References are also important to the development of detailed training plans.
- q. <u>Distance Learning Products</u> (IMI, CBT, MCI, etc.). Include this component when the event can be taught via one of these media methods vice attending a formal course of instruction or receiving MOJT.
- r. <u>Support Requirements</u>. This is a list of the external and internal support the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. The list includes, but is not limited to:
 - •Range(s)/Training Area
 - •Ordnance
 - Equipment
 - •Materials
 - •Other Units/Personnel
 - •Other Support Requirements
- s. <u>Miscellaneous</u>. Provide any additional information that assists in the planning and execution of the event. Miscellaneous information may include, but is not limited to:
 - •Admin Instructions
 - •Special Personnel Certifications
 - •Equipment Operating Hours
 - •Road Miles
- 2. Community-based T&R Manuals have several additional components not found in unit-based T&R Manuals. These additions do not apply to this T&R Manual.

1010. CBRN TRAINING

- 1. All personnel assigned to the operating force must be trained in chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear defense (CBRN), in order to survive and continue their mission in this environment. Individual proficiency standards are defined as survival and basic operating standards. Survival standards are those that the individual must master in order to survive CBRN attacks. Basic operating standards are those that the individual, and collectively the unit, must perform to continue operations in a CBRN environment.
- 2. In order to develop and maintain the ability to operate in a CBRN environment, CBRN training is an integral part of the training plan and events in this T&R Manual. Units should train under CBRN conditions whenever possible. Per reference (c), all units must be capable of accomplishing their assigned mission in a contaminated environment.

1011. NIGHT TRAINING

- 1. While it is understood that all personnel and units of the operating force are capable of performing their assigned mission in "every climate and place," current doctrine emphasizes the requirement to perform assigned missions at night and during periods of limited visibility. Basic skills are significantly more difficult when visibility is limited.
- 2. To ensure units are capable of accomplishing their mission they must train under the conditions of limited visibility. Units should strive to conduct all events in this T&R Manual during both day and night/limited visibility conditions. When there is limited training time available, night training should take precedence over daylight training, contingent on individual, crew, and unit proficiency.

1012. OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM)

- 1. ORM is a process that enables commanders to plan for and minimize risk while still accomplishing the mission. It is a decision making tool used by Marines at all levels to increase operational effectiveness by anticipating hazards and reducing the potential for loss, thereby increasing the probability of a successful mission. ORM minimizes risks to acceptable levels, commensurate with mission accomplishment.
- 2. Commanders, leaders, maintainers, planners, and schedulers will integrate risk assessment in the decision-making process and implement hazard controls to reduce risk to acceptable levels. Applying the ORM process will reduce mishaps, lower costs, and provide for more efficient use of resources. ORM assists the commander in conserving lives and resources and avoiding unnecessary risk, making an informed decision to implement a course of action (COA), identifying feasible and effective control measures where specific measures do not exist, and providing reasonable alternatives for mission accomplishment. Most importantly, ORM assists the commander in determining the balance between training realism and unnecessary risks in training, the impact of training operations on the environment, and the adjustment of training plans to fit the level of proficiency and experience of

Sailors/Marines and leaders. Further guidance for ORM is found in references (b) and (d).

1013. APPLICATION OF SIMULATION

- 1. Simulations/Simulators and other training devices shall be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on the identified training task. Particular emphasis shall be placed on simulators that provide training that might be limited by safety considerations or constraints on training space, time, or other resources. When deciding on simulation issues, the primary consideration shall be improving the quality of training and consequently the state of readiness. Potential savings in operating and support costs normally shall be an important secondary consideration.
- 2. Each training event contains information relating to the applicability of simulation. If simulator training applies to the event, then the applicable simulator(s) is/are listed in the "Simulation" section and the CRP for simulation training is given. This simulation training can either be used in place of live training, at the reduced CRP indicated; or can be used as a precursor training for the live event, i.e., weapons simulators, convoy trainers, observed fire trainers, etc. It is recommended that tasks be performed by simulation prior to being performed in a live-fire environment. However, in the case where simulation is used as a precursor for the live event, then the unit will receive credit for the live event CRP only. If a tactical situation develops that precludes performing the live event, the unit would then receive credit for the simulation CRP.

1014. MARINE CORPS GROUND TER PROGRAM

- 1. The Marine Corps Ground T&R Program continues to evolve. The vision for Ground T&R Program is to publish a T&R Manual for every readiness-reporting unit so that core capability METs are clearly defined with supporting collective training standards, and to publish community-based T&R Manuals for all occupational fields whose personnel augment other units to increase their combat and/or logistic capabilities. The vision for this program includes plans to provide a Marine Corps training management information system that enables tracking of unit and individual training accomplishments by unit commanders and small unit leaders, automatically computing CRP for both units and individual Marines based upon MOS and rank (or billet). Linkage of T&R events to the Marine Corps Task List (MCTL), through the core capability METs, has enabled objective assessment of training readiness in the DRRS.
- 2. DRRS measures and reports on the readiness of military forces and the supporting infrastructure to meet missions and goals assigned by the Secretary of Defense. With unit CRP based on the unit's training toward its METs, the CRP will provide a more accurate picture of a unit's readiness. This will give fidelity to future funding requests and factor into the allocation of resources. Additionally, the Ground T&R Program will help to ensure training remains focused on mission accomplishment and that training readiness reporting is tied to units' METLs.

CHAPTER 2

MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS LIST

											PA	RAGRAPH	PAG	ŀΕ
MWO	MISSION	ESSENTIAL	TASKS	(MET)							•	2000	2-2	į

CHAPTER 2

MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS LIST

2000. MWO MISSION ESSENTIAL TASK (MET) MATRIX. The MWO Mission Essential Task List (METL) Table includes the designated MET number. The following event codes are the linked collective events that support the MET.

MET 1. CONDU	CT MOUNTAIN WARFARE OPERATIONS
MW-ANPK-3001	Employ a pack string
MW-ANPK-4001	Utilize pack animals
MW-ANPK-5001	Utilize pack animals
MW-ANPK-6001	Conduct pack animal operations
MW-AVAL-6001	Conduct an avalanche search
MW-CLMB-3001	Establish a fixed rope lane
MW-CLMB-3002	Establish a top rope site
MW-CLMB-3003	Party climb a vertical or near vertical (5th class) obstacle
MW-CLMB-4001	Negotiate a vertical to near vertical (5th class) obstacle
MW-CLMB-4002	Conduct a cliff reconnaissance
MW-CLMB-5001	Negotiate a vertical to near vertical (5th class) obstacle
MW-CLMB-5002	Establish a cliff assault site
MW-MOVE-3001	Cross a stream
MW-MOVE-3002	Establish a tent team position
MW-MOVE-3003	Employ the sled
MW-MOVE-3004	Conduct heliborne/tilt-rotor insertion technique
MW-MOVE-3005	Conduct heliborne/tilt-rotor extraction technique
MW-MOVE-4001	Establish a stream crossing site
MW-MOVE-4002	Cross a frozen water obstacle
MW-MOVE-4003	Conduct mountain picketing
MW-MOVE-4004	Conduct skijoring operations
MW-MOVE-5001	Conduct mountain picketing
MW-MOVE-6001	Negotiate an obstacle
MW-TRST-3001	Establish a one rope bridge
MW-TRST-3002	Establish a raising/lowering system
MW-TRST-3003	Establish a rappel lane
MW-TRST-4001	Operate a one rope bridge
MW-TRST-4002	Operate a raising/lowering system
MW-TRST-4003	Operate a rappel site

CHAPTER 3

COLLECTIVE TRAINING

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
PURPOSE	. 3000	3-2
EVENT CODING	. 3001	3-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	. 3002	3-2
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY LEVEL	. 3003	3-4
6000-LEVEL EVENTS	. 3004	3-5
5000-LEVEL EVENTS	. 3005	3-9
4000-LEVEL EVENTS	. 3006	3-17
3000-LEVEL EVENTS	. 3007	3-27

CHAPTER 3

COLLECTIVE EVENTS

- **3000. PURPOSE.** Chapter 3 contains collective training events for mountain warfare operations.
- 3001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with an up to 12-digit, 3-field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX. In some cases, all 12 digits may not be used. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:
- a. Field one Each event starts with "MW" indicating that the event is for mountain warfare operations.
- b. Field two This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. See Appendix F for a complete list of functional areas used in this manual.

Code	Description	Example
ANPK	Animal Packing	MW-ANPK-XXXX
AVAL	Avalanche Identification	MW-AVAL-XXXX
CLMB	Climbing	MW-CLMB-XXXX
MOVE	Movement & Maneuver	MW-MOVE-XXXX
TRST	Tactical Rope Suspension Techniques	MW-TRST-XXXX

c. Field three - This field provides the unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing. For collective events the hundreds digit (0X00) indicates the higher level collective event that the event supports. If a "0" is in this digit, the event either supports multiple higher level collective events or does not support a specific higher level collective event.

3002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES

- 1. The "complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain" condition identified in many of the individual training events is defined as the following:
 - a. Slope angles of 0 90 degrees/vertical present, with steep slopes of 20-60 degrees common.
 - b. Descriptors of elevation above sea level in feet:

Very high (over 10,000')
High (6,000-10,000')
Moderately high (3,000-6,000')

c. Temperature Bands:

Wet cold (+40 to +20 F)
Dry cold (+20 to -5 F)
Intense cold (-5 to -25 F)
Extreme cold (-25 to -60 F)

2. The "T/E" that may be identified in the condition of the individual training events is defined as; current individual load bearing equipment, which includes pack, sleeping bag, etc. for sustained operations in the field. It also includes billet specific equipment as specified by MOS, unit billet and unit SOP, such as weapons and SL-3 for those weapons. If the unit SOP specifies any particular equipment, this is included.

3003. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY LEVEL

Event Code	E- Coded	Event	Page
		6000-LEVEL	<u> </u>
MW-ANPK-6001	X	Conduct pack animal operations	3-5
MW-AVAL-6001	X	Conduct an avalanche search	3-5
MW-MOVE-6001	Х	Negotiate an obstacle	3-6
MW-MOVE-6002	х	Establish a snow-covered defensive position	3-7
		5000-LEVEL	
MW-ANPK-5001		Utilize pack animals	3-9
MW-AVAL-5001		Conduct an avalanche search	3-9
MW-AVAL-5602		Conduct a probe line	3-10
MW-CLMB-5001		Negotiate a vertical to near vertical (5th class) obstacle	3-11
MW-CLMB-5002		Establish a cliff assault site	3-12
MW-MOVE-5001		Conduct mountain picketing	3-13
MW-MOVE-5002		Operate from a snow-covered patrol base	3-14
MW-MOVE-5003	1	Conduct a snow-covered ambush	3-15
		4000-LEVEL	
MW-ANPK-4001		Utilize pack animals	3-17
MW-AVAL-4601		Conduct a hasty probe	3-17
MW-CLMB-4001		Negotiate a vertical to near vertical (5th class) obstacle	3-18
MW-CLMB-4002		Conduct a cliff reconnaissance	3-19
MW-MOVE-4001		Establish a stream crossing site	3-20
MW-MOVE-4002		Cross a frozen water obstacle	3-21
MW-MOVE-4003		Conduct mountain picketing	3-22
MW-MOVE-4004		Conduct skijoring operations	3-23
MW-TRST-4001		Operate a one rope bridge	3-24
MW-TRST-4002		Operate a raising/lowering system	3-25
MW-TRST-4003		Operate a rappel site	3-25
		3000-LEVEL	
MW-ANPK-3001		Employ a pack string	3-27
MW-CLMB-3001		Establish a fixed rope lane	3-28
MW-CLMB-3002		Establish a top rope site	3-29
MW-CLMB-3003		Party climb a vertical or near vertical (5th class) obstacle	3-29
MW-MOVE-3001		Cross a stream	3-30
MW-MOVE-3002		Establish a tent team position	3-31
MW-MOVE-3003		Employ the sled	3-32
MW-MOVE-3004		Conduct heliborne/tilt-rotor insertion technique	3-33
MW-MOVE-3005		Conduct heliborne/tilt-rotor extraction technique	3-34
MW-TRST-3001		Establish a one rope bridge	3-34
MW-TRST-3002		Establish a raising/lowering system	3-35
MW-TRST-3003		Establish a rappel lane	3-36

3004. 6000-LEVEL EVENTS

MW-ANPK-6001: Conduct pack animal operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1 .

EVALUATION-CODED: YES SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>DESCRIPTION</u>: This task applies to the employment, care, and maintenance considerations for use of pack animals during operations in any environment.

CONDITION: Given a requirement to move personnel and equipment, a company-size unit, trained personnel, pack animals, and pack equipment.

STANDARD: Moving equipment and personnel using pack animals without loss of, injuries or damage to animals, personnel, or equipment being transported.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Conduct planning and coordination.
- 2. Task organize.
- 3. Issue orders to all organic, attached, and supporting units.
- 4. Conduct inspections and rehearsals.
- 5. Conduct movement.
- 6. Control movement.
- 7. Conduct immediate action drills.
- 8. Integrate pack animals into patrol base operations.
- 9. Send and receive required reports.
- 10. Perform post-mission actions.
- 11. Conduct debrief.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-ANPK-2001	MW-ANPK-2002	MW-ANPK-2003
MW-ANPK-2004	MW-ANPK-2005	MW-ANPK-2006
MW-ANPK-2007	MW-ANPK-2008	MW-ANPK-2009
MW-ANPK-2010	MW-ANPK-2011	MW-ANPK-2012
MW-ANPK-3001	MW-ANPK-4001	MW-AVAL-2001
MW-AVAL-2002	MW-AVAL-2003	MW-CLEQ-2001
MW-CLMB-2001	MW-CLMB-2003	MW-CLMB-2004
MW-ENVR-2002	MW-ENVR-2003	

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-87842-127-0 Packin' In On Mules and Horses
- 2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual

MW-AVAL-6001: Conduct an avalanche search

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: YES SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

NAVMC 3500.70A 29 Sep 2011

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a MCCWIK and an avalanche rescue mission with a victim, in snow-covered complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Cold Weather Operations Appendix B Avalanche Avoidance, Search, and Rescue.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Mark probe line contacts.
- 2. Dig up probe line contacts.
- 3. Conduct continuing actions.
- 4. Evaluate the accident site.
- 5. Determine likely burial sites.
- 6. Organize personnel for company avalanche search/rescue.
- 7. Select appropriate avalanche rescue equipment.
- 8. Post avalanche sentries.
- 9. Establish warming tent.
- 10. Conduct hasty probe.
- 11. Conduct coarse probe line.
- 12. Conduct fine probe line.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-AVAL-2001	MW-AVAL-2003	MW-AVAL-2002
MW-AVAL-4601	MW-AVAL-5001	MW-AVAL-5602

RELATED EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-I	ENVR-2002	MW-ENVR-2003
-------------------	-----------	--------------

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-364-3 The Avalanche Handbook
- 2. 0-9685856-1-2 Backcountry Avalanche Awareness
- 3. MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations
- 4. The American Institute for Avalanche Research and Education

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Complex, Compartmentalized, Mountainous Training/Maneuver Area

MISCELLANEOUS:

<u>ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS</u>: This training requires avalanche producing terrain or an area that resembles an avalanche prone slope (snow covered slopes between 20 degrees and 45 degrees).

MW-MOVE-6001: Negotiate an obstacle

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: YES SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

DESCRIPTION: This event will allow the unit to negotiate the various types of obstacles found in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain.

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a company size unit, trained personnel, a MACK, and T/E in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain.

STANDARD: While maintaining security and situational awareness, execute scheme of maneuver without loss of personnel or equipment.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Report obstacles to higher headquarters.
- 2. Occupy overwatch positions.
- 3. Establish security.
- 4. Conduct leader's reconnaissance.
- 5. Designate crossing point/lanes.
- 6. Negotiate obstacle.
- 7. Recover equipment.
- 8. Report obstacle negotiation to higher headquarters.

PREREOUISITE EVENTS:

W-CLEQ-2001		MW-CLMB-3001	MW-CLMB-4001
W-CLMB-4002		MW-CLMB-5001	MW-ENVR-2001
W-ENVR-2002		MW-ENVR-2003	MW-ENVR-2004
W-ENVR-2006		MW-MOVE-4003	MW-MOVE-5001
W-TRST-3001		MW-TRST-3002	MW-TRST-4001
W-TRST-4002			
	W-CLEQ-2001 W-CLMB-4002 W-ENVR-2002 W-ENVR-2006 W-TRST-3001	W-CLMB-4002 W-ENVR-2002 W-ENVR-2006 W-TRST-3001	W-CLEQ-2001 MW-CLMB-3001 W-CLMB-4002 MW-CLMB-5001 W-ENVR-2002 MW-ENVR-2003 W-ENVR-2006 MW-MOVE-4003 W-TRST-3001 MW-TRST-3002

REFERENCES:

- 1. MCWP 3-35.1 Mountain Warfare Operations
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Complex, Compartmentalized, Mountainous Training/Maneuver Area.

<u>MW-MOVE-6002</u>: Establish a snow-covered defensive position.

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: YES SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>DESCRIPTION</u>: This event teaches the unit how to select the correct site, establish defensive positions, dig in the living areas/trench plan and how to live in a cold weather/snow covered environment.

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a company size unit, T/E, and a Marine Cold Weather Infantry Kit (MCWIK), in a cold weather environment, and in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain.

STANDARD: That provides security and survivability appropriate to the tactical and environmental situation.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Reconnoiter the patrol base.
- 2. Perform rear security team actions.
- 3. Mark the jumping off point, track plan, living areas, defensive positions, and specific use areas.
- 4. Occupy the patrol base.
- 5. Establish temporary observation posts.
- 6. Establish the dummy tracks.
- 7. Establish control measures.
- 8. Develop a fire plan sketch.
- 9. Communicate with higher headquarters, observation posts, and throughout unit.
- 10. Employ force protection measures.
- 11. Conduct continuing actions, including mountain tent routine.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001	MW-CLEQ-2002	MW-ENGO-2002
MW-ENVR-2001	MW-ENVR-2003	MW-ENVR-2002
MW-ENVR-2004	MW-ENVR-2005	MW-ENVR-2006
MW-ENVR-2007	MW-MOVE-2001	MW-MOVE-2002
MW-MOVE-2005	MW-MOVE-2006	MW-MOVE-2007
MW-MOVE-2012	MW-MOVE-2014	MW-MOVE-2016
MW-MOVE-5002	MW-SURV-2003	

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing.
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

EQUIPMENT: To complete this task, the unit will need one MCCWIK per four Marines.

3005. 5000-LEVEL EVENTS

MW-ANPK-5001: Utilize pack animals

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

DESCRIPTION: This task applies to the employment, care, and maintenance considerations for use of pack animals during operations in any environment.

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a requirement to move personnel and equipment, a platoon size unit, trained personnel, pack animals, pack equipment.

STANDARD: Effectively moving equipment and personnel without loss of, injuries or damage to animals, personnel, or equipment being transported.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Task organize.
- 2. Issue orders to all organic, attached, and supporting units.
- 3. Conduct inspections and rehearsals.
- 4. Conduct movement.
- 5. Control movement.
- 6. Conduct immediate action drills.
- 7. Integrate pack animals into patrol base operations.
- 8. Send and receive required reports.
- 9. Conduct post-mission actions.
- 10. Conduct debrief.
- 11. Conduct planning and coordination.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-ANPK-2002	MW-ANPK-2003
MW-ANPK-2005	MW-ANPK-2006
MW-ANPK-2008	MW-ANPK-2009
MW-ANPK-2011	MW-ANPK-2012
MW-ANPK-4001	MW-AVAL-2001
MW-AVAL-2003	MW-CLEQ-2001
MW-CLMB-2001	MW-CLMB-2003
MW-ENVR-2003	
	MW-ANPK-2005 MW-ANPK-2008 MW-ANPK-2011 MW-ANPK-4001 MW-AVAL-2003 MW-CLMB-2001

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-87842-127-0 Packin' In On Mules and Horses
- 2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual

<u>MW-AVAL-5001</u>: Conduct an avalanche search

SUPPORTED MET(S): None

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a MCCWIK and an avalanche rescue mission with a victim, in snow-covered complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Cold Weather Operations Section 6009 Avalanche Search Organization.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Evaluate the accident site.
- 2. Determine likely burial sites.
- 3. Organize personnel for company avalanche search/rescue.
- 4. Select appropriate avalanche rescue equipment.
- 5. Post avalanche sentries.
- 6. Establish warming tent.
- 7. Conduct hasty probe.
- 8. Conduct coarse probe line.
- 9. Conduct fine probe line.
- 10. Mark probe line contacts.
- 11. Dig up probe line contacts.
- 12. Conduct continuing actions.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-AVAL-2001	MW-AVAL-2002	MW-AVAL-2003
MW-CLEQ-2001	MW-ENVR-2002	MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-364-3 The Avalanche Handbook
- 2. 0-9685856-1-2 Backcountry Avalanche Awareness
- 3. MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations
- 4. The American Institute for Avalanche Research and Education

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Complex, Compartmentalized, Mountainous Training/Maneuver Area

MISCELLANEOUS:

<u>ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS</u>: This training requires avalanche-producing terrain or an area that resembles an avalanche prone slope (snow covered slopes between 20 degrees and 45 degrees).

MW-AVAL-5602: Conduct a probe line

SUPPORTED MET(S): None

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a MCCWIK and an avalanche rescue mission with a victim, in snow-covered complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Cold Weather Operations Section 6009 Avalanche Search Organization.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Organize personnel for probing.
- 2. Select appropriate avalanche rescue equipment.
- 3. Conduct coarse probe line.
- 4. Conduct fine probe line.
- 5. Mark probe line contacts.
- 6. Dig up probe line contacts.
- 7. Conduct continuing actions.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-AVAL-2001

MW-AVAL-2002

MW-AVAL-2003

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-364-3 The Avalanche Handbook
- 2. 0-9685856-1-2 Backcountry Avalanche Awareness
- 3. MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations
- 4. The American Institute for Avalanche Research and Education

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Complex, Compartmentalized, Mountainous Training/Maneuver Area

MISCELLANEOUS:

<u>ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS</u>: This training requires avalanche-producing terrain or an area that resembles an avalanche prone slope (snow covered slopes between 20 degrees and 45 degrees).

MW-CLMB-5001: Negotiate a vertical to near vertical (5th class) obstacle

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

DESCRIPTION: This event will allow the unit to climb moderate to vertical terrain using top rope lanes and/or one or all of the four-types of fixed lane installations.

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a platoon size unit, trained personnel, a MACK, and T/E, in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: With all personnel and equipment consolidated on the top side of the obstacle per MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Ascend a simple fixed rope.
- 2. Ascend a semi fixed rope.
- 3. Ascend a fixed rope.
- 4. Ascend a cable ladder.
- 5. Ascend a top rope.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001	MW-CLEQ-2003	MW-CLMB-2001
MW-CLMB-2002	MW-CLMB-2003	MW-CLMB-2007
MW-ENVR-2002	MW-ENVR-2003	MW-TRST-2001
MW-TRST-2002		

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing.
- 2. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
- 3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 4. MCRP 3-35.2A Small Unit Leader's Guide To Mountain Operations
- 5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Complex, Compartmentalized, Mountainous Training/Maneuver Area

MW-CLMB-5002: Establish a cliff assault site

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>DESCRIPTION</u>: This event will establish the lanes for follow on forces, utilizing the cliff assault planning considerations, and following the five phases of the cliff assault.

CONDITION: Given a mission, an assault climber platoon, a MACK, and T/E, and in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain.

STANDARD: Lanes established to meet the supported unit's scheme of maneuver requirements.

- 1. Select proper gear.
- 2. Conduct movement to cliff assault site.
- 3. Employ organic and/or supporting fires to suppress the enemy.
- 4. Establish security.
- 5. Establish cliff assault lanes.
- 6. Report lane status.

- 7. Supported unit movement through the lanes.
- 8. Perform post assault actions.
- 9. Secure the cliff assault site.
- 10. Conduct a cliff reconnaissance.
- 11. Task organize.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001	MW-CLEQ-2003	MW-CLMB-2001
MW-CLMB-2002	MW-CLMB-2003	MW-CLMB-2004
MW-CLMB-2005	MW-CLMB-2009	MW-CLMB-2010
MW-CLMB-2011	MW-CLMB-2012	MW-CLMB-2013
MW-ENVR-2002	MW-ENVR-2003	

REFERENCES:

- 1. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 2. FM 31-72 Mountain Operations
- 3. MCRP 3-35.2A Small Unit Leader's Guide To Mountain Operations
- 4. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Cliff site

MW-MOVE-5001: Conduct mountain picketing

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

DESCRIPTION: This task is designed for a dismounted rifle platoon to insert on top of a ridgeline to conduct sustained mountain picketing by providing eyes on the adjacent compartment to provide overwatch on a maneuvering force in the near compartment. This event supports infantry maneuver tasks.

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given an order, qualified personnel, mission-specific equipment, T/E, and complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain.

STANDARD: Providing early and accurate warning of an enemy, attriting his reconnaissance elements, and providing reaction time and maneuver space to the maneuvering element in the near compartment.

- 1. Task organize.
- 2. Occupy picket site, as required.
- 3. Establish observation posts.
- 4. Conduct reconnaissance.
- 5. Designate control measures.
- 6. Establish communications.

- 7. Conduct continuing actions.
- 8. Insert onto the ridge.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing.
- 2. FM 31-70 Basic Cold Weather Operations
- 3. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Complex, compartmentalized, mountainous training/maneuver area

MW-MOVE-5002: Operate from a snow-covered patrol base

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>DESCRIPTION</u>: This task is designed for a dismounted reinforced rifle platoon, reinforced with weapons organic to a rifle company.

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a mission, an assigned area to patrol, location of adjacent friendly units, estimates of enemy locations, most recent activities of the enemy, attachments or detachments, and activities of the local populace; and in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain.

STANDARD: Operating a command post and conduct patrols from the patrol base for 48-72 hours to support the commander's intent.

- 1. Occupy the patrol base.
- 2. Establish temporary observation posts.
- 3. Establish the dummy track.
- 4. Establish control measures.
- 5. Develop a fire plan sketch.
- Communicate with higher headquarters, observation posts, and throughout unit.
- 7. Reconnoiter the patrol base.
- 8. Perform rear security team actions.
- 9. Mark the jumping off point, track plan, living areas, defensive positions, and specific use areas.
- 10. Employ force protection measures.
- 11. Conduct continuing actions, including mountain tent routine.

PREREOUISITE	EVENTS:
--------------	---------

MW-CLEQ-2001	MW-CLEQ-2002	MW-ENGO-2002
MW-ENVR-2001	MW-ENVR-2002	MW-ENVR-2003
MW-ENVR-2004	MW-ENVR-2005	MW-ENVR-2006
MW-ENVR-2007	MW-MOVE-2001	MW-MOVE-2002
MW-MOVE-2005	MW-MOVE-2006	MW-MOVE-2007
MW-MOVE-2012	MW-MOVE-2014	MW-MOVE-2016
MW-SURV-2003		

REFERENCES:

- 1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 3. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light
Forces

MW-MOVE-5003: Conduct a snow-covered ambush

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, a mission, and commander's intent; in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain; and below32 degrees Fahrenheit.

STANDARD: Supporting the scheme of maneuver and without environmental injuries.

- 1. Post security at ambush site.
- 2. Establish warming tent (rotate personnel, make hot wets).
- 3. Establish ski/snowshoe pit for rapid egress.
- 4. Load security element into ambush site, using isopor mat, buddy system for sleeping bag and thermos.
- 5. Select clothing and equipment (including over-the-snow equipment).
- 6. Establish ORP at higher elevation than kill zone.
- 7. Conduct leader's recon of ambush site.
- 8. Load support element into ambush site using isopor mat, buddy system for sleeping bag and thermos.
- 9. Load assault element into ambush site using isopor mat, buddy system for sleeping bag and thermos.
- 10. Initiate ambush, or egress at cut off time.
- 11. Search kill zone, if practical.
- 12. Remove assault element from ambush site to ORP.
- 13. Remove support element from ambush site to ORP.
- 14. Remove security element from ambush site to ORP.
- 15. Employ fire support plan to isolate objective and mask departure.
- 16. Conduct BAMCIS.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC		Quantity
A059 Cartridge,	5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	10 rounds per weapon
A064 Cartridge,	5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	30 rounds per weapon
B519 Cartridge,	40mm Target Practice M781	1 round per weapon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17753 Automated Infantry Platoon Battle Course Facility Code 17752 Infantry Platoon Battle Course

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Range must support all company weapons.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

- 1. All targets must be destroyed by organic weapons to accomplish this task to standard.
- 2. Live ammunition is preferred if training facilities are available but this task can be accomplished to standard with blank ammunition.

3006. 4000-LEVEL EVENTS

MW-ANPK-4001: Utilize pack animals

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

CONDITION: Given an order, trained personnel, pack animals, and pack equipment.

STANDARD: Effectively moving equipment and personnel using pack animals without loss of, injuries or damage to animals, personnel, or equipment being transported.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Task organize.
- 2. Conduct planning and coordination.
- 3. Issue orders to all supported and supporting personnel.
- 4. Conduct inspections and rehearsals.
- 5. Conduct movement.
- 6. Control movement.
- 7. Conduct immediate action drills.
- 8. Integrate pack animals into patrol base operations.
- 9. Send and receive required reports.
- 10. Perform post-mission actions.
- 11. Conduct debrief.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-ANPK-2001	MW-ANPK-2002	MW-ANPK-2003
MW-ANPK-2004	MW-ANPK-2005	MW-ANPK-2006
MW-ANPK-2007	MW-ANPK-2008	MW-ANPK-2009
MW-ANPK-2010	MW-ANPK-2011	MW-ANPK-2012
MW-ANPK-3001	MW-AVAL-2001	MW-AVAL-2002
MW-AVAL-2003	MW-CLEQ-2001	MW-CLMB-2001
MW-CLMB-2003	MW-CLMB-2004	MW-ENVR-2002
MW-ENVR-2003		

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-87842-127-0 Packin' In On Mules and Horses
- 2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

MW-AVAL-4601: Conduct a hasty probe

SUPPORTED MET(S): None

NAVMC 3500.70A 29 Sep 2011

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>CONDITION</u>: In snow-covered complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain, without the aid of references, given a MCCWIK and an avalanche rescue mission with a victim.

<u>STANDARD</u>: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Cold Weather Operations Section 6009 Avalanche Search Organization.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Mark contacts.
- 2. Dig up contacts.
- 3. Conduct continuing actions.
- 4. Probe likely burial sites.
- 5. Organize personnel for hasty probe.
- 6. Select appropriate avalanche rescue equipment.
- 7. Determine likely burial sites.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-AVAL-2001 MW-AVAL-2002 MW-AVAL-2003 MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-ENVR-2002 MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-364-3 The Avalanche Handbook
- 2. 0-9685856-1-2 Backcountry Avalanche Awareness
- 3. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Cold Weather Operations
- 4. The American Institute for Avalanche Research and Education

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Complex, Compartmentalized, Mountainous Training/Maneuver Area

MISCELLANEOUS:

<u>ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS</u>: This training requires avalanche producing terrain or an area that resembles an avalanche prone slope (snow-covered slopes between 20 degrees and 45 degrees).

MW-CLMB-4001: Negotiate a vertical to near vertical (5th class) obstacle

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>DESCRIPTION</u>: This event will allow the unit to climb moderate to vertical terrain using top rope lanes and/or one or all of the four-types of fixed lane installations.

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a squad-sized unit, trained personnel, a MACK, and T/E, and in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain.

STANDARD: All personnel and equipment consolidated on the top side of the obstacle per MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Ascend a simple fixed rope.
- 2. Ascend a semi fixed rope.
- 3. Ascend a fixed rope.
- 4. Ascend a cable ladder.
- 5. Ascend a top rope.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001	MW-CLEQ-2003	MW-CLMB-2001
MW-CLMB-2002	MW-CLMB-2003	MW-CLMB-2004
MW-ENVR-2002	MW-ENVR-2003	MW-TRST-2001
MW-TRST-2002		

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
- 2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing.
- 3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 4. MCRP 3-35.2A Small Unit Leader's Guide To Mountain Operations
- 5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light
Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

<u>ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS</u>: Complex, Compartmentalized, Mountainous Training/Maneuver Area

MW-CLMB-4002: Conduct a cliff reconnaissance

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>DESCRIPTION</u>: This event will enable the squad to assess the feasibility for ascent of any given cliff through the use of the cliff sketch and the cliff report.

CONDITION: Given a mission, in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain, given trained personnel, a MACK and equipment.

STANDARD: Providing detailed information in support of commander's specific information requirements and the collection plan.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Plan and prepare for an area reconnaissance mission.
- 2. Conduct insertion into objective area.
- 3. Employ movement techniques to and within the objective area.
- 4. Execute actions on the objective.
- 5. Retrograde from the objective area.
- 6. Conduct extract or exfiltration/re-entry of friendly lines.
- 7. Conduct post-mission priorities of work.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-CLMB-2013

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
- 2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing.
- 3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 4. MCRP 3-35.2A Small Unit Leader's Guide To Mountain Operations
- 5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light
Forces

EQUIPMENT: To accomplish this task the unit will need a sketchbook and a cliff report format.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: This training requires a cliff site.

MISCELLANEOUS:

<u>ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS</u>: Actions on the objective may include proofing lanes, cliff sketch, and cliff report, requiring the leader to account for time requirements in planning.

MW-MOVE-4001: Establish a stream crossing site

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>DESCRIPTION</u>: This event includes site selection considerations and safety precautions utilized in crossing a stream.

CONDITION: Given a mission, qualified personnel, MACK, T/E, and a stream, and with the aid of references.

<u>STANDARD</u>: Per MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Section 3406 Tactical Stream Crossing.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Organize personnel/equipment.
- 2. Select crossing site.
- 3. Establish security.
- 4. Implement safety precautions.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-MOVE-2004 MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing.
- 2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 3. FM 31-72 Mountain Operations
- 4. MCRP 3-35.2A Small Unit Leader's Guide To Mountain Operations
- 5. MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

EQUIPMENT: To accomplish this task the Marines will need the following: two safety swimmers with life vests, one safety line and two throw bags.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: This training requires a stream.

MISCELLANEOUS:

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: The safety swimmers should be WSA or higher

MW-MOVE-4002: Cross a frozen water obstacle

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>DESCRIPTION</u>: This event includes determining ice stability, using tools and special equipment required, route selection, crossing the obstacle, the safety precautions involved, and how to conduct a self rescue.

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a mission, qualified personnel, T/E, and a frozen water obstacle, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: Personnel and equipment consolidated at the far side of the obstacle per MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Part VI Crossing Frozen Waterways.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Select crossing site.
- 2. Conduct ice reconnaissance.
- 3. Employ individual safety precautions.
- 4. Utilize rescue techniques, if necessary.
- 5. Cross the selected route.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-ENGO-2002 MW-ENVR-2002 MW-ENVR-2003 MW-MOVE-2005

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing.
- 2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 3. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

EQUIPMENT: To accomplish this task the unit will need a belay rope, available over-the-snow equipment, and ice reconnaissance tools such as ski poles or staff, augur, ice axe, etc.

MW-MOVE-4003: Conduct mountain picketing

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>DESCRIPTION</u>: This task is designed for a dismounted rifle squad to insert on top of a ridgeline to conduct sustained mountain picketing by providing eyes on the adjacent compartment to provide overwatch on a maneuvering force in the near compartment. This event supports infantry maneuver tasks.

CONDITION: Given an order, qualified personnel, mission-specific equipment, T/E, and complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain.

STANDARD: Providing early and accurate warning of an enemy, attriting his reconnaissance elements, and providing reaction time and maneuver space to the maneuvering element in the near compartment.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Task organize.
- 2. Insert onto the ridge.
- 3. Conduct travelling overwatch, as required.
- 4. Occupy picket site, as required.
- 5. Establish observation post.
- 6. Conduct reconnaissance.
- 7. Designate control measures.
- 8. Establish communications.

- 9. Conduct continuing actions.
- 10. Conduct resupply, as required.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
- 2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling for Infantry Units

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light

Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Complex, compartmentalized, mountainous

training/maneuver area

MW-MOVE-4004: Conduct skijoring operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>DESCRIPTION</u>: This event includes quickly traversing snow covered terrain by being pulled behind a vehicle using ropes.

CONDITION: Given trained personnel, a vehicle, T/E, skis, a tow-rope, and snow-covered terrain.

STANDARD: Reaching destination with all personnel and without environmental injury to any personnel.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Employ skis.
- 2. Implement safety requirements for skijoring.
- 3. Prepare vehicle for skijoring.
- 4. Implement skijoring techniques.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-ENVR-2003 MW-ENVR-2002 MW-MOVE-2003 MW-MOVE-2010 MW-MOVE-2010

REFERENCES:

- 1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light

Forces

EQUIPMENT: To accomplish this task, the unit will need a vehicle capable of travelling over the snow, a driver, a safety observer, a pair of skis with poles per man and a static rope.

MW-TRST-4001: Operate a one-rope bridge

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>DESCRIPTION</u>: This event will allow a unit to operate a one rope bridge, under the guidance and supervision of current qualified personnel, to move personnel and equipment across an obstacle.

CONDITION: Given a mission, qualified personnel, MACK, and T/E in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: Required personnel and equipment consolidated on the far side of the obstacle per MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Section 3003 One-Rope Bridge.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- Organize personnel/equipment.
- 2. Provide local security.
- 3. Enforce control/safety measures.
- 4. Construct a one rope bridge.
- 5. Prepare personnel and equipment for movement.
- 6. Supervise movement of personnel and equipment.
- 7. Recover equipment.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-CLEQ-2003 MW-ENVR-2002 MW-ENVR-2002 MW-TRST-2001 MW-TRST-2002

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
- 2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing.
- 3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 4. MCRP 3-35.2A Small Unit Leader's Guide To Mountain Operations
- 5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Complex, compartmentalized, mountainous maneuver/training area

MW-TRST-4002: Operate a raising/lowering system

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

DESCRIPTION: This event is allows a unit to operate any raising/lowering system to move personnel or equipment on vertical to near vertical terrain, directly supervised by qualified personnel.

CONDITION: Given a mission, qualified personnel, MACK, and T/E in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: Required load consolidated on the top or bottom of the obstacle per MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Organize personnel/equipment.
- 2. Provide local security.
- 3. Enforce control/safety measures.
- 4. Construct raising/lowering system.
- 5. Prepare load for raising or lowering.
- 6. Raise or lower load.
- 7. Recover equipment.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
- 2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing.
- 3. FM 31-72 Mountain Operations
- 4. MCRP 3-35.2A Small Unit Leader's Guide To Mountain Operations
- 5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Complex, compartmentalized, mountainous maneuver/training area

MW-TRST-4003: Operate a rappel site

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>DESCRIPTION</u>: This event is allows a unit to descend by rope, vertical to near vertical terrain, directly supervised by qualified personnel.

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a mission, qualified personnel, MACK, T/E, and a vertical surface, and with the aid of references.

<u>STANDARD</u>: Personnel consolidated at the bottom of the obstacle per MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- Organize personnel/equipment.
- 2. Provide local security.
- 3. Enforce control/safety measures.
- 4. Establish rappel lanes.
- 5. Supervise movement of personnel through rappel lanes.
- 6. Rappel.
- 7. Recover equipment.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: .

MW-CLEQ-2001	MW-CLEQ-2003	MW-ENVR-2002
MW-ENVR-2003	MW-TRST-2001	MW-TRST-2002

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing.
- 2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 3. MCRP 3-35.2A Small Unit Leader's Guide To Mountain Operations
- 4. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light
Forces

3007. 3000-LEVEL EVENTS

MW-ANPK-3001: Employ a pack string

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

DESCRIPTION: This task is executed by leading a string of animals through any and all terrain that is indigenous to the pack animals.

CONDITION: Given pack animals, pack equipment, and the requirement to conduct pack string operations.

STANDARD: Moving equipment and personnel.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Identify the necessary personnel for animal packing.
- 2. Identify the local pack species.
- 3. Identify the anatomy of a pack animal.
- 4. Select a pack animal for military operations.
- 5. Identify the tack required for animal packing.
- 6. Perform first aid on an injured animal
- 7. Perform maintenance on an animal's hoof.
- 8. Saddle a pack animal.
- 9. Distribute the weight on a pack animal.
- 10. Secure a load to a pack animal.
- 11. Prepare a CASEVAC saddle.
- 12. Negotiate obstacles with pack animals.
- 13. Establish a bivouac site with a pack string.
- 14. Employ a pack animal.
- 15. Employ a pack string.
- 16. Plan for the employment of pack animals.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-ANPK-2001	MW-ANPK-2005	MW-ANPK-2006
MW-ANPK-2007	MW-ANPK-2008	MW-ANPK-2009
MW-ANPK-2010	MW-ANPK-2011	MW-ANPK-2012
MW-CLEQ-2001	MW-ENVR-2002	MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. FM 3-05.213 Special Forces Use of Pack Animals
- 2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

MW-CLMB-3001: Establish a fixed rope lane

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>DESCRIPTION</u>: This event will allow the unit to climb moderate to vertical terrain using one or all of the four types of fixed rope installations.

CONDITION: Given a mission, trained personnel, MACK, and T/E; in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain.

STANDARD: With the lane established to meet the supported unit's scheme of maneuver requirements.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Establish a simple fixed rope lane
- 2. Establish a semi fixed rope lane.
- 3. Establish a fixed rope lane.
- 4. Establish a cable ladder lane.
- 5. Guide troops over and through lane.
- 6. Perform follow on actions.
- 7. Select a route.
- 8. Construct anchors.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001	MW-CLEQ-2003	MW-CLMB-2001
MW-CLMB-2002	MW-CLMB-2003	MW-CLMB-2004
MW-CLMB-2007	MW-ENVR-2002	MW-ENVR-2003
MW-TRST-2001	MW-TRST-2002	

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
- 2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing.
- 3. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
- 4. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 5. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 6. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

<u>ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS</u>: This training requires 3rd through 5th class terrain.

MW-CLMB-3002: Establish a top rope site

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>DESCRIPTION:</u> This event will allow the unit to climb vertical to near vertical (5th class) terrain using top rope techniques with a safety line and a belay man.

CONDITION: Given a mission, trained personnel, MACK, and T/E in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: All personnel consolidated on the top side of the obstacle per MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Select site.
- 2. Construct an anchor.
- 3. Secure a climber to a rope.
- 4. Establish a belay stance from the top.
- 5. Establish a belay stance from the bottom.
- 6. Execute climbing commands.
- 7. Operate a belay.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-CLEQ-2003 MW-ENVR-2002 MW-ENVR-2003 MW-TRST-2001 MW-TRST-2002

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing.
- 2. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
- 3. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 4. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This training requires 5th class terrain.

MW-CLMB-3003: Party climb a vertical or near vertical (5th class) obstacle

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>DESCRIPTION</u>: This event allows a climbing team to utilize lead party climbing techniques to ascend vertical or near vertical (5th class) obstacles.

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a climbing team, MACK, T/E, and a 5th class obstacle in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: All personnel and equipment consolidated on the top side of the obstacle per MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Rig as #2 climber.
- 2. Rig as #1 climber.
- 3. Climb single pitch 5th class.
- 4. Climb a multi-pitch route.
- 5. Climb at night.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001	MW-CLEQ-2003	MW-CLMB-2001
MW-CLMB-2002	MW-CLMB-2003	MW-CLMB-2007
MW-ENVR-2002	MW-ENVR-2003	MW-TRST-2001
MW-TRST-2002		

REFERENCES:

- 1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 3. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

 $\underline{ t EQUIPMENT}$: The climbing team will need a climbing rack, climbing rope and $\underline{ t helmets}$

MISCELLANEOUS:

<u>ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS</u>: This training requires a complex, compartmentalized, mountainous maneuver/training area.

MW-MOVE-3001: Cross a stream

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>DESCRIPTION</u>: This event is designed to teach a unit the site selection considerations, safety precautions and team crossing techniques utilized in crossing a water obstacle.

CONDITION: Given personnel, T/E, and a stream, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: Personnel consolidated at the far side of the stream per MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Employ safety precautions.
- 2. Prepare personnel and equipment for crossing.
- 3. Cross selected route.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEO-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

MW-MOVE-2004

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing.
- 2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 3. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 4. MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

EQUIPMENT: To accomplish this task the marines will need the following: two safety swimmers with life vests, one safety line, and two throw bags.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Complex, Compartmentalized, Mountainous Maneuver/Training Area

MISCELLANEOUS:

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: The safety swimmers should be WSA qualified or higher

MW-MOVE-3002: Establish a tent team position

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>DESCRIPTION</u>: This event includes site selection, establishment of defensive positions, digging in the living areas/trench plan and tent routine.

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a team, T/E, MCCWIK, and an extreme cold weather (ECW) tent while operating in a cold weather environment, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: Per Tent Team Leader's checklist in MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit

Leader's Guide to Mountain Operations.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Construct defensive positions.
- 2. Establish the tent site.
- 3. Conduct priorities of work.
- 4. Conduct continuing actions.
- 5. Organize personal and equipment.
- 6. Select a site.
- 7. Establish local security.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-CLEQ-2002 MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003 MW-MOVE-2006

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing.
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: This training requires cold weather terrain.

MW-MOVE-3003: Employ the sled

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

DESCRIPTION: This event includes negotiation of snow-covered terrain while pulling a MCCWIK sled.

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a team, over-the-snow-mobility equipment, MCCWIK, and T/E while operating in a snow-covered environment.

STANDARD: Reaching destination with all personnel and equipment and without injury or damage to personnel or equipment.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Select a route.
- 2. Employ over-the-snow equipment.
- 3. Break trail.
- 4. Pull sled.
- 5. Maintain sled.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-AVAL-2001 MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-ENVR-2002 MW-ENVR-2003 MW-MOVE-2002 MW-MOVE-2003

CHAINED EVENTS: MW-AVAL-2001

REFERENCES:

- 1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light
Forces

EQUIPMENT: To accomplish this task, the unit will need over-the-snow mobility, and a MCCWIK sled.

MW-MOVE-3004: Conduct heliborne/tilt-rotor insertion technique

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>DESCRIPTION</u>: This event includes the close debarkation of a helicopter or tilt-rotor aircraft, actions in the LZ. This technique is commonly referred to as the "Akhio Huddle."

CONDITION: Given a mission, personnel, an LZ, T/E, and an aircraft while operating in a snow-covered environment.

STANDARD: Reaching destination with all personnel and equipment and without injury or damage to personnel or equipment.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Make individual preparations.
- 2. Conduct debarkation.
- 3. Stage equipment.
- 4. Conduct huddle.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

EQUIPMENT: To accomplish this task the unit will need over-the-snow mobility

MW-MOVE-3005: Conduct heliborne/tilt-rotor extraction technique

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>DESCRIPTION</u>: This event includes the close embarkation of a helicopter or tilt-rotor aircraft, actions in the LZ. This technique is commonly referred to as the "Akhio Huddle."

CONDITION: Given a mission, personnel, an LZ, T/E, and an aircraft while operating in a snow-covered environment.

STANDARD: Boarding aircraft with all personnel and equipment and without injury or damage to personnel or equipment.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Prepare LZ.
- 2. Stage equipment.
- 3. Make individual preparations.
- 4. Conduct huddle.
- 5. Conduct embarkation.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

EQUIPMENT: To accomplish this task the unit will need over-the-snow mobility

MW-TRST-3001: Establish a one-rope bridge

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1
EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>DESCRIPTION</u>: This event will allow a two man team to establish a high tension rope system to allow a unit to move personnel and equipment over or across an obstacle. One of those two men must be qualified personnel.

CONDITION: Given a mission, a qualified team, MACK, T/E, and an obstacle, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: Per MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Section 3003 One-Rope Bridge.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Organize personnel/equipment.
- 2. Select a site.
- 3. Implement control/safety measures.
- 4. Construct the one rope bridge.
- 5. Retrieve the one rope bridge.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-CLEQ-2003 MW-ENVR-2002 MW-ENVR-2003 MW-TRST-2001 MW-TRST-2002

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
- 2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing.
- 3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 4. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 5. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 6. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light
Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: One of those two Marines must be a current, qualified Tactical Rope Suspension Technician (TRST), Assault Climber, or Summer Mountain Leader.

MW-TRST-3002: Establish a raising/lowering system

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>DESCRIPTION</u>: This event will allow a two man team to establish a raising/lowering system to allow a unit to raise/lower gear and equipment on a vertical to near vertical obstacle. One of those two men must be a current, qualified Tactical Rope Suspension Technician (TRST).

CONDITION: Given a mission, qualified personnel, MACK, and T/E in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: Per MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Section 3005 Vertical Hauling System.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Employ height gaining device, if necessary.
- 2. Select a site.
- 3. Organize personnel/equipment.
- 4. Establish local security.
- 5. Implement control/safety measures.
- 6. Construct the raising/lowering system.
- 7. Deploy ropes.
- 8. Retrieve the equipment.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-CLEQ-2003 MW-ENVR-2002 MW-ENVR-2003 MW-TRST-2001 MW-TRST-2002

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
- 2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing.
- 3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 4. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: This training requires a complex, compartmentalized, mountainous maneuver/training area.

MISCELLANEOUS:

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: One of those two Marines must be a current, qualified Tactical Rope Suspension Technician (TRST), Assault Climber, or Summer Mountain Leader.

MW-TRST-3003: Establish a rappel lane

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

DESCRIPTION: This event will allow a two man team to establish a rappel lane to allow a unit to descend a vertical to near vertical obstacle.

CONDITION: Given a mission, qualified personnel, MACK, T/E, and a vertical surface, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: Per MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Section 3008 Rappelling.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

- 1. Organize personnel/equipment.
- 2. Select a site.
- 3. Implement control/safety measures.
- 4. Construct the rappel site.
- 5. Retrieve the rope.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-CLEQ-2003 MW-ENVR-2002 MW-ENVR-2001 MW-TRST-2001 MW-TRST-2002

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
- 2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing.
- 3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 4. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light
Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: One of those two Marines must be a current, qualified Tactical Rope Suspension Technician (TRST), Assault Climber, or Summer Mountain Leader.

MWO T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 4

MOUNTAIN WARFARE OPERATIONS INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

	PARAGRAPH	PAGI
PURPOSE	. 4000	4-2
EVENT CODING	. 4001	4-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	. 4002	4-2
INDEX OF EVENTS	. 4003	4-4
2000-LEVEL EVENTS	. 4004	4-5

MWO T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 4

MOUNTAIN WARFARE INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

- **4000. PURPOSE.** This chapter contains individual training events for mountain warfare operations.
- **4001. EVENT CODING.** Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with an up to 12-digit, 3-field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX. In some cases, all 12 digits may not be used. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:
- a. Field one. Each event starts with MW, indicating that the event is for mountain warfare operations general use.
- b. Field two. This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. In this chapter, the functional areas are as follows:

Code	Description	Example
ANPK	Animal Packing	MW-ANPK-2XXX
AVAL	Avalanche Identification	MW-AVAL-2XXX
CLEQ	Clothing/Equipment	MW-CLEQ-2XXX
CLMB	Climbing	MW-CLMB-2XXX
ENGO	Engineer Operations	MW-ENGO-2XXX
ENVR	Cold Weather/Mountain Environment	MW-ENVR-2XXX
FIRE	Fires (Warfighting Function)	MW-FIRE-2XXX
HRST	Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques	MW-HRST-2XXX
MOVE	Movement & Maneuver	MW-MOVE-2XXX
SURV	Survival	MW-SURV-2XXX
TRST	Tactical Rope Suspension Techniques	MW-TRST-2XXX

c. Field three. All individual events within T&R Manuals are either 1000-level for events taught at MOS-producing formal schools or 2000-level for events taught at advanced-level schools or MOJT. This chapter contains 2000-level events.

4002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES

- 1. The "complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain" condition identified in many of the individual training events is defined as the following:
 - a. Slope angles of 0 90 degrees/vertical present, with steep slopes of 20-60 degrees common.

b. Descriptors of elevation above sea level in feet:

Very high (over 10,000')
High (6,000-10,000')
Moderately high (3,000-6,000')

c. Temperature Bands:

Wet cold (+40 to +20 F)
Dry cold (+20 to -5 F)
Intense cold (-5 to -25 F)
Extreme cold (-25 to -60 F)

2. The "T/E" that may be identified in the condition of the individual training events is defined as; current individual load bearing equipment, which includes pack, sleeping bag, etc. for sustained operations in the field. It also includes billet specific equipment as specified by MOS, unit billet and unit SOP, such as weapons and SL-3 for those weapons. If the unit SOP specifies any particular equipment, this is included.

4003. INDEX OF EVENTS

Event Code	Event	Page
	2000-LEVEL EVENTS	· ·
MW-ANPK-2001	Supervise the handling of pack animals	4-7
MW-ANPK-2002	Handle pack animals	4-7
MW-ANPK-2003	Select a pack animal for military operations	4-8
MW-ANPK-2004	Employ tack required for animal packing	4-8
MW-ANPK-2005	Perform first aid on an injured animal	4-9
MW-ANPK-2006	Construct a load	4-10
MW-ANPK-2007	Secure a load to a pack animal	4-10
MW-ANPK-2008	Prepare a casualty evacuation (CASEVAC) saddle	4-11
MW-ANPK-2009	Negotiate obstacles with pack animals	4-12
MW-ANPK-2010	Conduct bivouac routine with a pack string	4-12
MW-ANPK-2011	Move with pack animal	4-13
MW-ANPK-2012	Plan for the employment of pack animals	4-14
MW-AVAL-2001	Assess avalanche hazard	4-14
MW-AVAL-2002	Manage an avalanche search	4-15
MW-AVAL-2003	Conduct avalanche probe actions	4-15
MW-CLEQ-2001	Employ personal clothing/equipment	4-16
MW-CLEQ-2002	Employ the MCCWIK	4-17
MW-CLEQ-2003	Manage a Marine Assault Climber Kit (MACK)	4-17
MW-CLEQ-2004	Maintain ski equipment	4-18
MW-CLMB-2001	Perform friction belay	4-19
MW-CLMB-2002	Conduct a balance climb	4-19
MW-CLMB-2003	Conduct a top rope climb	4-20
MW-CLMB-2004	Conduct a fixed lane climb	4-21
MW-CLMB-2005	Negotiate steep earth terrain	4-21
MW-CLMB-2006	Negotiate snow/ice covered terrain	4-22
MW-CLMB-2007	Perform mechanical belay	4-23
MW-CLMB-2008	Establish a top-rope	4-24
MW-CLMB-2009	Conduct a lead climb	4-25
MW-CLMB-2010	Utilize aid climbing techniques	4-26
MW-CLMB-2011	Perform a vertical rescue	4-26
MW-CLMB-2012	Establish a fixed rope lane installation	4-27
MW-CLMB-2013	Conduct cliff reconnaissance	4-28
MW-CLMB-2014	Employ snow/ice protection	4-29
MW-CLMB-2015	Conduct a multi-pitch climb	4-29
MW-CLMB-2016	Establish a steep earth lane	4-30
MW-CLMB-2017	Establish a steep snow/ice lane	4-31
MW-ENGO-2001	Construct rock field fortifications	4-32
MW-ENGO-2002	Construct winter/cold weather field fortifications	4-32
MW-ENGO-2003	Conduct an ice reconnaissance	4-33
MW-ENGO-2004	Conduct an ice breach	4-34
MW-ENGO-2005	Conduct avalanche initiation	4-35
MW-ENGO-2006	Supervise the establishment of semi-permanent rope	4-35
1 21100 2000	installations (rigging)	^ 33
MW-ENGO-2007	Conduct cave reconnaissance	4-36
MW-ENVR-2001	Overcome leadership challenges	4-37
MW-ENVR-2002	Implement the principles of mountain safety	4-37
MW-ENVR-2003	Maintain mountain health	4-38

NET TOTAL 0004	7	1 20
MW-ENVR-2004	Assess the weather	4-38
MW-ENVR-2005	Apply snow-covered concealment techniques	4-39
MW-ENVR-2006	Survey mountain terrain	4-40
MW-ENVR-2007	Conduct a mountain leader meeting	4-40
MW-FIRE-2001	Employ a medium machinegun	4-41
MW-FIRE-2002	Employ a mounted medium machinegun	4-42
MW-FIRE-2003	Employ a heavy machinegun	4-43
MW-FIRE-2004	Employ a mounted heavy machinegun	4-43
MW-FIRE-2005	Adjust fire	4-44
MW-HRST-2001	Conduct a fast rope descent	4-45
MW-HRST-2002	Conduct a special purpose insertion/extraction (SPIE)	
MW-HRST-2003	Rig a helicopter/tilt-rotor aircraft for fast- roping	4-46
MW-HRST-2004	Manage helicopter/tilt rotor fast-rope operations	4-47
MW-HRST-2005	Manage helicopter/tilt-rotor rappelling operations	4-48
MW-HRST-2006	Rig a helicopter/tilt-rotor for SPIE	4-48
MW-HRST-2007	Manage special purpose insertion/extraction (SPIE) operations	4-49
MW-HRST-2008	Rig a helicopter for a Jacob's Ladder	4-50
MW-HRST-2009	Manage Jacob's Ladder operations	4-50
MW-HRST-2010	Supervise safety of HRST operations	4-51
MW-HRST-2011	Manage helicopter rope suspension techniques	4-52
	(HRST) equipment	4 50
MW-MOVE-2001	Move over mountainous terrain	4-52
MW-MOVE-2002	Employ snow shoes	4-53
MW-MOVE-2003	Employ skis	4-54
MW-MOVE-2004	Cross a stream	4-54
MW-MOVE-2005	Negotiate a snow/ice-covered water obstacle	4-55
MW-MOVE-2006	Bivouac in a snow-covered environment	4-56
MW-MOVE-2007	Conduct a mountain casualty evacuation (CASEVAC)	4-56
MW-MOVE-2008	Move over glaciated terrain	4-57
MW-MOVE-2009	Supervise skijoring	4-58
MW-MOVE-2010	Operate an over-the-snow vehicle	4-59
MW-MOVE-2011	Perform Military Skier techniques	4-59
MW-MOVE-2012	Manage a snow-covered defensive position	4-60
MW-MOVE-2013	Manage a stream crossing site	4-61
MW-MOVE-2014	Manage a snow/ice covered water obstacle crossing site	4-61
MW-MOVE-2015	Lead a group over glaciated terrain	4-62
MW-MOVE-2016	Lead a group through mountainous terrain	4-63
MW-MOVE-2017	Lead a cliff assault	4-63
MW-MOVE-2018	Perform heliborne/tilt-rotor insertion	4-64
MW-MOVE-2019	Perform heliborne/tilt-rotor extraction	4-65
MW-SURV-2001	Prepare for survival	4-65
MW-SURV-2002	Construct survival fires	4-66
MW-SURV-2003	Procure potable water	4-67
MW-SURV-2004	Utilize a survival shelter	4-67
MW-SURV-2005	Procure game .	4-68
MW-SURV-2006	Procure fish	4-68
MW-SURV-2007	Construct expedient survival implements	4-69
MW-SURV-2008	Subsist on plants	4-69

MW-SURV-2009	Subsist on insects	4-70
MW-SURV-2010	Prepare animal for consumption	4-70
MW-SURV-2011	Apply mountain survival medicine techniques	4-71
MW-SURV-2012	Navigate in a survival situation	4-72
MW-SURV-2013	Signal for recovery	4-72
MW-SURV-2014	Perform tracking	4-73
MW-SURV-2015	Facilitate recovery	4-73
MW-TRST-2001	Utilize knots	4-74
MW-TRST-2002	Utilize an anchor	4-75
MW-TRST-2003	Employ protection	4-75
MW-TRST-2004	Conduct a rappel	4-76
MW-TRST-2005	Cross a one-rope bridge	4-77
MW-TRST-2006	Operate a raising/lowering system	4-78
MW-TRST-2007	Establish a rappel lane	4-78
MW-TRST-2008	Establish a height-gaining device	4-79
MW-TRST-2009	Establish a high-tension rope installation	4-80
MW-TRST-2010	Manage a raising/lowering system	4-81

4004. 2000-LEVEL EVENTS

MW-ANPK-2001: Supervise the handling of pack animals

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

BILLETS: Assistant Pack master, Pack Master

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given pack animals, handlers, tack and packing equipment, and without the aid of references.

<u>STANDARD</u>: Ensuring accountability of all pack animals and handlers, and serviceability of all tack and packing equipment, and completion of all performance steps.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Train handlers.
- 2. Supervise animal health and well-being.
- 3. Supervise handlers.
- 4. Supervise packing of equipment.
- 5. Coordinate movement.

REFERENCES:

- 1. FM 3-05.213 Special Forces Use of Pack Animals
- 2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

MATERIAL: Tack and pack animals.

MW-ANPK-2002: Handle pack animals

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a pack animal, tack and packing equipment, and without the aid of references.

STANDARD: Ensuring all required pack train personnel are assigned to a billet and properly trained so the pack string can effectively support combat operations in accordance with the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Maintain pack animal.
- 2. Maintain tack and equipment.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

MATERIAL: Tack and pack animals.

MW-ANPK-2003: Select a pack animal for military operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Without the aid of references, given a mission, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: Which meets mission requirements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Assess the local pack species.
- 2. Assess the anatomy of a pack animal.
- 3. Identify the signs of good conformation.
- 4. Identify the signs of poor conformation.
- 5. Obtain the animal.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-ANPK-2001

MW-ANPK-2002

MW-ANPK-2012

REFERENCES:

- 1. 006-270139-8 Book of Horses, A Complete Medical Reference Guide for Horses and Foals
- 2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual
- 3. Elements of Farrier Science

MW-ANPK-2004: Employ tack required for animal packing

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: With the aid of references, given a pack animal and tack.

STANDARD: Ensuring the proper fit of tack.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Employ native saddle.
- 2. Employ a halter.
- 3. Employ a mantee (also mantie).
- 4. Employ a lash line.
- 5. Employ a mantee rope.
- 6. Employ a pannier.
- 7. Employ a saddle blanket.
- 8. Groom a pack animal.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-ANPK-2001

MW-ANPK-2002

MW-ANPK-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. FM 3-05.213 Special Forces Use of Pack Animals
- 2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

MATERIAL: Native saddle, mantee, mantee rope, lash line, set of panniers, pack animal, halter, and saddle blanket.

MW-ANPK-2005: Perform first aid on an injured animal

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-MCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: With the aid of references, given an injured pack animal, and an animal First Aid Kit.

STANDARD: Effectively treating the animal so the animal can continue the mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Identify type of injury.
- 2. Treat minor injury.
- 3. Treat major injury.
- 4. Identify the four ways to destroy stock.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-ANPK-2001

MW-ANPK-2002

MW-ANPK-2003

REFERENCES:

- 006-270139-8 Book of Horses, A Complete Medical Reference Guide for Horses and Foals
- 2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ROOMS/BUILDINGS: Stable and a tack room.

MATERIAL: Pack animal, equine 1st aid kit

MW-ANPK-2006: Construct a load

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, 2NDLT, 1STLT,

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given pack equipment and supplies to be loaded, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: Balance the load within five pounds of either side.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Build the load.
- 2. Weigh the load.

REFERENCES:

- 006-270139-8 Book of Horses, A Complete Medical Reference Guide for Horses and Foals
- 2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

MATERIAL: Hanging scale, panniers, mantee tarp, mantee rope, and equipment to build a load.

MW-ANPK-2007: Secure a load to a pack animal

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: With the aid of references, a pack animal, a load and the required gear.

STANDARD: Without loss of equipment or injury to the animal.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select hitch for load.
- 2. Tie hitch.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-ANPK-2006

REFERENCES:

- 1. FM 3-05.213 Special Forces Use of Pack Animals
- 2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ROOMS/BUILDINGS: Hitching rails.

MATERIAL: Saddle, mantee, mantee rope, lash line, set of panniers, pack animal, halter, saddle blanket, and load.

MW-ANPK-2008: Prepare a casualty evacuation (CASEVAC) saddle

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3,
CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Without the aid of references, given a pack animal, and required gear.

STANDARD: Without further injury to the casualty.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Saddle pack animal.
- 2. Tie stirrups.
- 3. Tie seat between front and rear crossbuck.
- 4. Secure seat.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

MATERIAL: Pack animal, pack saddle blanket, sawbuck saddle, mantee rope, and lash line.

MW-ANPK-2009: Negotiate obstacles with pack animals

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Without the aid of references, given a pack animal, pack equipment, and an obstacle.

STANDARD: Ensuring all personnel and pack animals safely cross the obstacle.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select crossing site.
- 2. Conduct reconnaissance.
- 3. Employ individual safety precautions.
- 4. Cross the selected route.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-ANPK-2006

MW-ANPK-2007

REFERENCES:

- 1. FM 3-05.213 Special Forces Use of Pack Animals
- 2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

MATERIAL: Loaded pack string

MW-ANPK-2010: Conduct bivouac routine with a pack string

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Without the aid of references, given a pack string and the required gear.

STANDARD: In performance step sequence.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Bring in the pack animals one at a time.
- 2. Unload animals.
- 3. Establish a picket line.
- 4. Stage gear.
- 5. Groom the animal.
- 6. Feed animal.

- 7. Water animal.
- 8. Maintain animal health.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-ANPK-2006

MW-ANPK-2007

MW-ANPK-2008

MW-ANPK-2009

REFERENCES:

- 1. FM 3-05.213 Special Forces Use of Pack Animals
- 2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

<u>ROOMS/BUILDINGS</u>: Classroom large enough to accommodate 72 students; a barn, stable, and anchors for picket lines as well.

MW-ANPK-2011: Move with pack animal

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT,
WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Without the aid of references, given a mission, pack animal, pack equipment, and a load to be moved.

STANDARD: Without loss of load or injury to the animal.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Prepare for movement.
- 2. Conduct movement.
- 3. Conduct follow-on actions.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-ANPK-2001 MW-ANPK-2007 MW-ANPK-2005 MW-ANPK-2008 MW-ANPK-2006 MW-ANPK-2009

MW-ANPK-2010

REFERENCES:

- 1. FM 3-05.213 Special Forces Use of Pack Animals
- 2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

MATERIAL: Pack animals, pack saddle blanket, pack saddle, mantee rope, lash line, mantee, and halter.

MW-ANPK-2012: Plan for the employment of pack animals

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3,
CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an order, with the aid of the references.

STANDARD: Supporting the scheme of maneuver and in the time allotted by the commanding officer.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Plan for the capabilities and the limitations of pack animals.
- 2. Plan for the capabilities and the limitations of pack equipment.
- 3. Plan for the employment considerations of a pack string.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-ANPK-2001 MW-ANPK-2006 MW-ANPK-2007 MW-ANPK-2008 MW-ANPK-2010 MW-ANPK-2011

REFERENCES:

- 1. FM 3-05.213 Special Forces Use of Pack Animals
- 2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual

MW-AVAL-2001: Assess avalanche hazard

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT,
1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-MCPO, NV-ENS,
NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR, NV-CDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a requirement, a MCCWIK, in snow-covered complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations Section 1001 Data Collection and Analysis.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Determine snow pack stability.
- 2. Determine weather factors.
- 3. Determine human factors.
- 4. Identify risks.
- 5. Select route.
- 6. Select travel technique.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEO-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

1. 0-89886-364-3 The Avalanche Handbook

- 2. 0-89886-834-3 Staying Alive in Avalanche Terrain
- 3. MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations
- 4. The American Institute for Avalanche Research and Education

MW-AVAL-2002: Manage an avalanche search

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

BILLETS: Winter Mountain Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT,

1STLT, CAPT, NV-PO-3, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-MCPO

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an avalanche site, MCCWIK, personnel, and victim(s).

STANDARD: In performance step sequence.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Evaluate the avalanche site.
- 2. Post avalanche sentries.
- 3. Determine likely burial sites.
- 4. Choose avalanche rescue equipment.
- 5. Direct probe for an avalanche victim.
- 6. Direct recovery of avalanche victim.
- 7. Supervise follow-on actions.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-AVAL-2001

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

RELATED EVENTS: MW-AVAL-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-364-3 The Avalanche Handbook
- 2. 0-89886-834-3 Staying Alive in Avalanche Terrain
- 3. 0-9685856-1-2 Backcountry Avalanche Awareness
- 4. The American Institute for Avalanche Research and Education

MW-AVAL-2003: Conduct avalanche probe actions

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MCCWIK, T/E, victim(s), in an avalanche site, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Section 6009 Probing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Conduct hasty probe.
- 2. Conduct coarse probe, on command.
- 3. Conduct fine probe, on command.
- 4. Mark contacts.
- 5. Dig up contacts.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEO-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

MW-CLEQ-2001: Employ personal clothing/equipment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-MCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LCDR, NV-CDR, NV-CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given clothing and equipment, in a cold weather environment and/or complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain, and without the aid of references.

STANDARD: Preventing environmental injuries.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select clothing/equipment.
- 2. Assemble warfighting load.
- 3. Use clothing/equipment.
- 4. Maintain clothing/equipment.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MW-CLEQ-2002: Employ the MCCWIK

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 18 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-MCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR, NV-CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: In complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain, given a MCCWIK, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Employ tent.
- 2. Employ stove.
- 3. Employ additional kit items.
- 4. Employ sled.
- 5. Pack MCCWIK.
- 6. Maintain MCCWIK.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

EQUIPMENT: HRST Kit, Rappelling Ropes

MW-CLEQ-2003: Manage a Marine Assault Climber Kit (MACK)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

BILLETS: Assault Climber, Summer Mountain Leader

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MACK and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: Maintaining serviceability of all components.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Inventory MACK components.
- 2. Maintain MACK components.
- 3. Replace unserviceable components.
- 4. Cut nylon ropes/tape for specific use.
- 5. Store MACK components.
- 6. Issue MACK components based on specific use.
- 7. Determine service life of MACK components.
- 8. Ensure rope logs are maintained.
- 9. Recover MACK components.

REFERENCES:

- 1. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 2. SL-3-10161A Marine Corps Stocklist, Marine Assault Climbers Kit MACK
- 3. MACK Marine Assault Climbers Kit Care and Maintenance Manual

MW-CLEQ-2004: Maintain ski equipment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-MCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR, NV-CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given skis, wax kit, poles, skins, and in snow-covered terrain.

STANDARD: Ensuring serviceability and fit of equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Inspect the serviceability of ski equipment.
- 2. Adjust ski bindings.
- 3. Adjust ski poles.
- 4. Wax skis.
- 5. Attach skins to skis.

RELATED EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-CLEQ-2002

REFERENCES:

- 1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations
- 3. MCRP 3-35.1D Cold Region Operations

MW-CLMB-2001: Perform friction belay

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a rope, in vertical to near vertical terrain, and without the aid of references.

STANDARD: Controlling the load.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select a friction feature.
- 2. Select technique.
- 3. Utilize technique.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-TRST-2001 MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing
- 2. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
- 3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 4. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MW-CLMB-2002: Conduct a balance climb

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a helmet and spotter, in an environment with 4th or 5th class terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: Employing proper commands and techniques per MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select a route.
- 2. Make individual preparations.
- 3. Communicate with climbing commands.
- 4. Climb surface.
- 5. Spot another climber.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing
- 2. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
- 3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 4. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 5. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 6. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

<u>ROOMS/BUILDINGS</u>: Minimum 2 story building with windows, external pipes, suitable anchor points on top and external building material that facilitates aid climbing.

MW-CLMB-2003: Conduct a top rope climb

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a top rope lane, T/E, improvised harness material, a locking carabineer, and without the aid of references.

STANDARD: Reaching the top without injury or loss of equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Make individual preparations.
- 2. Tie in to the end of the top rope.
- 3. Climb.
- 4. Utilize climbing commands.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-CLMB-2001

MW-CLMB-2002

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing
- 2. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
- 3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 4. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MW-CLMB-2004: Conduct a fixed lane climb

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a fixed lane, T/E, a sling rope, two locking carabiners, and without the aid of references.

STANDARD: Reaching the top without injury or loss of equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Make individual preparations.
- 2. Attach to lane.
- 3. Negotiate lane.
- 4. Detach from lane.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-ENVR-2003 MW-CLMB-2003

MW-ENVR-2002

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing
- 2. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
- 3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

<u>MW-CLMB-2005</u>: Negotiate steep earth terrain

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MACK and T/E, in 2nd to 4th class terrain, and without the aid of references.

STANDARD: Reaching top without injury or loss of equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select a route.
- 2. Make individual preparations.
- 3. Attach to a rope, if necessary.
- 4. Climb using steep earth equipment.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001	MW-CLEQ-2002	MW-CLMB-2003
MW-ENVR-2002	MW-ENVR-2003	MW-TRST-2001
MW-TRST-2002	MW-TRST-2003	

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing
- 2. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
- 3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 4. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MW-CLMB-2006: Negotiate snow/ice covered terrain

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MACK and T/E, in hard snow/ice covered or glaciated terrain, and without the aid of references.

STANDARD: Reaching objective without injury or loss of equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select a route.
- 2. Make individual preparations.
- 3. Employ an ice axe.

- 4. Create steps.
- 5. Employ crampons, if necessary.
- 6. Descend a slope by glissading.
- 7. Self-arrest.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-CLMB-2005

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing
- 2. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
- 3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MW-CLMB-2007: Perform mechanical belay

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

BILLETS: Assault Climber, Summer Mountain Leader

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MACK and T/E, in 3rd to 5th class terrain, and without the aid of references.

STANDARD: Controlling the load.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select belay device.
- 2. Execute belay technique.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-ENVR-2003 MW-CLMB-2003

MW-ENVR-2002

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing
- 2. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
- 3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 4. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MW-CLMB-2008: Establish a top-rope

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

BILLETS: Assault Climber, Summer Mountain Leader

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3,
CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2,
NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a MACK and T/E, in 4th to 5th class terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Chapter 3010 Top Roping.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select site.
- 2. Establish anchor.
- 3. Belay #2 climber.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-CLEQ-2003 MW-ENVR-2002 MW-ENVR-2003 MW-TRST-2001 MW-TRST-2002

MW-TRST-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing
- 2. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
- 3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 4. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: For the individual Marine to conduct this training an area with a 20 ft cliff or lower is required.

MW-CLMB-2009: Conduct a lead climb

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MACK and T/E, in 3rd to 5th class terrain, given a MACK, T/E, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Chapter 3000 Movement and Maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select a route.
- 2. Make personal preparations.
- 3. Establish bottom anchor, as required.
- 4. Inspect bottom belay.
- 5. Communicate with climbing commands.
- 6. Employ protection.
- 7. Climb selected route.
- 8. Establish top side anchor.
- 9. Establish top side belay.
- 10. Belay #2 climber.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-CLMB-2003

MW-CLMB-2008

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
- 2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing
- 3. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
- 4. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 5. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 6. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MISCELLANEOUS:

<u>ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS</u>: Proper execution of technique requires a belayer.

MW-CLMB-2010: Utilize aid climbing techniques

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a MACK and T/E, in 4th or 5th class terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Chapter 3015 Military Aid Climbing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select equipment.
- 2. Employ aid techniques.
- 3. Transition, as required.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-CLMB-2009

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
- 2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing
- 3. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
- 4. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 5. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 6. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Requires a belayer.

MW-CLMB-2011: Perform a vertical rescue

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3,
CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2,
NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MACK and T/E, in 4th or 5th class terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: Delivering disabled climber to destination without further injury.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select rescue technique.
- 2. Utilize rescue technique.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEO-2001

MW-CLMB-2010

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
- 2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing
- 3. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
- 4. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 5. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 6. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Requires victim.

<u>MW-CLMB-2012</u>: Establish a fixed rope lane installation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

BILLETS: Assault Climber, Summer Mountain Leader

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MACK and T/E, in 4th or 5th class terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Chapter 3019 Fixed Ropes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select site.
- 2. Select support requirements.
- 3. Organize personnel and equipment.

- 4. Implement site safety/control measures.
- 5. Construct a site-specific fixed lane installation.
- 6. Perform fixed lane installation maintenance.
- 7. Supervise a fixed rope installation.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-CLMB-2010

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing
- 2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 3. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 4. MCWL X-FILE 3-35,21 Cliff Assault

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MW-CLMB-2013: Conduct cliff reconnaissance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a mission, T/E, MACK, recording medium, in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain, and without the aid of references.

STANDARD: Providing detailed information in support of the commander's specific information requirements and the collection plan.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Sketch cliff.
- 2. Prepare cliff report.
- 3. Submit cliff report.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-ENVR-2003 MW-CLMB-2010

MW-ENVR-2002

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing
- 2. FM 31-72 Mountain Operations
- 3. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

MW-CLMB-2014: Employ snow/ice protection

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

BILLETS: Summer Mountain Leader

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a route, MACK, and T/E, in ice/neve snow-covered terrain, and with the aid of references.

<u>STANDARD</u>: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Chapter 3024 Alpine Movement.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select protection.
- 2. Emplace protection.
- 3. Recover protection.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-ENVR-2003 MW-CLMB-2009

MW-ENVR-2002

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MW-CLMB-2015: Conduct a multi-pitch climb

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

BILLETS: Assault Climber, Summer Mountain Leader

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MACK, T/E, and a climbing partner, in 4th or 5th class terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Chapter 3000 Movement and Maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select a route.
- 2. Make personal preparations.
- 3. Establish bottom anchor, as required.
- 4. Inspect bottom belay.
- 5. Communicate with climbing commands.
- 6. Employ protection.
- 7. Climb selected route.
- 8. Establish anchor.
- 9. Establish belay.
- 10. Belay #2 climber.
- 11. Conduct lead changeover.
- 12. Transition.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-CLMB-2009 MW-CLMB-2010

MW-ENVR-2002 MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
- 2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing
- 3. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
- 4. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 5. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 6. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Requires a belayer.

MW-CLMB-2016: Establish a steep earth lane

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

BILLETS: Assault Climber, Summer Mountain Leader

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, CWO2, CWO3,
CWO4, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO1, NV-CPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MACK and T/E, in 2nd to 4th class terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Section 3016 Steep Earth Climbing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select site.
- Select support requirements.
- 3. Organize personnel and equipment.
- 4. Implement site safety/control measures.
- 5. Construct a steep earth lane.
- 6. Perform steep earth lane maintenance.
- 7. Supervise a steep earth lane.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-CLMB-2009 MW-ENVR-2002 MW-ENVR-2003

MW-CLMB-2010

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations

MW-CLMB-2017: Establish a steep snow/ice lane

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

BILLETS: Assault Climber, Winter Mountain Leader

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MACK and T/E, in snow- or ice-covered 2nd to 4th class terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Section 3016 Steep Earth Climbing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select site.
- 2. Select support requirements.
- 3. Organize personnel and equipment.
- 4. Implement site safety/control measures.
- 5. Construct a site-specific steep snow/ice lane.
- 6. Perform steep snow/ice lane maintenance.
- 7. Supervise a steep snow/ice lane.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-CLMB-2009

MW-CLMB-2010

MW-CLMB-2016

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations

MW-ENGO-2001: Construct rock field fortifications

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a requirement, T/E, MCCWIK, in rock-covered terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Section 6006 Mountain/Cold Weather Defensive Positions and Field Fortifications.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Identify location of positions.
- 2. Identify materials available.
- 3. Plan for obstacle integration.
- 4. Build field fortifications.
- 5. Conduct continuing actions.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2002 MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. FM 5-103 Field Fortifications
- 2. MCRP 3-17A/FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data
- 3. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

EQUIPMENT:

- 1. Chain saw
- 2. Axe
- 3. Shovel
- 4. Hammer
- 5. Nails

MW-ENGO-2002: Construct winter/cold weather field fortifications

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months EVALUATION-CODED: NO

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a requirement, T/E, MCCWIK, in frozen/snow-covered terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Section 6006 Mountain/Cold Weather Defensive Positions and Field Fortifications.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Identify location of positions.
- 2. Identify materials available.
- 3. Plan for obstacle integration.
- 4. Build field fortifications.
- 5. Conduct continuing actions.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. FM 5-103 Field Fortifications
- 2. MCRP 3-17A/FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data
- 3. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

EQUIPMENT:

- 1. Chain saw
- 2. Axe
- 3. Shovel
- 4. Hammer
- 5. Nails.

MW-ENGO-2003: Conduct an ice reconnaissance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an order, T/E, with ice covered bodies of water, and with the aid of references.

<u>STANDARD</u>: Answering information requirements and in accordance with MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations Chapter 3 Ice Reconnaissance.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Prepare tools and special equipment.
- 2. Implement safety and control measures.

- 3. Select a route to cross the ice.
- 4. Determine the thickness of the ice.
- 5. Determine the consistency of the ice.
- 6. Report information requirements.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. FM 5-170 Engineer Reconnaissance 2. FMFM 13 MAGTF Engineer Operations
- 3. MCRP 3-17A/FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data
- 4. MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports
- 5. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 6. MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light

Forces

EQUIPMENT: Safety rope

MW-ENGO-2004: Conduct an ice breach

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an order, T/E, and with ice covered bodies of water.

STANDARD: Per the requirement and without injury to self.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select explosives.
- 2. Prepare emplacement, as required.
- 3. Assemble the charge.
- 4. Prepare the priming system.
- 5. Emplace charge.
- 6. Detonate charge.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEO-2001 MW-ENVR-2003

MW-ENGO-2003

MW-ENVR-2002

REFERENCES:

- 1. FM 5-170 Engineer Reconnaissance
- 2. FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions
- 3. MCRP 3-17A/FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data

- 4. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 5. MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17830 Light Demolition Range

MW-ENGO-2005: Conduct avalanche initiation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an order, T/E, demolitions, and in snow-covered, complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain.

STANDARD: Per the requirement and without injury to self.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select site.
- 2. Select explosives.
- 3. Assemble the charges.
- 4. Prepare the priming system.
- 5. Prepare emplacement, as required.
- 6. Emplace the charges.
- 7. Detonate the charges.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-AVAL-2001 MW-AVAL-2002 MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2002 MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. FM 5-102 Countermobility
- 2. FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions
- 3. MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

<u>MW-ENGO-2006</u>: Supervise the establishment of semi-permanent rope installations (rigging)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an order, personnel, MACK, T/E, pioneer kit, a horizontal obstacle, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: Supporting the requirement in MCRP 3-17.7J Rigging Techniques, Procedures, and Applications Chapter 2 Knots, Splices, Attachments, and Ladders.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select a site.
- 2. Select personnel.
- 3. Select equipment.
- 4. Implement site safety/control measures.
- 5. Supervise construction.
- 6. Direct employment of a height-gaining device, if required.
- 7. Assess security of the installation.
- 8. Retrieve a semi-permanent rope installation.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001	MW-ENVR-2002	MW-ENVR-2003
MW-TRST-2001	MW-TRST-2002	MW-TRST-2003
MW-TRST-2005	MW-TRST-2006	

REFERENCES:

- 1. FMFM 13 MAGTF Engineer Operations
- 2. MCRP 3-17.7J Rigging Techniques, Procedures, and Applications
- 3. MCRP 3-17A/FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data
- 4. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 5. MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

MW-ENGO-2007: Conduct cave reconnaissance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

BILLETS: Assault Climber, Summer Mountain Leader

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a requirement, a cave, MACK, and T/E, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: Meeting the requirement and in accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Chapter 3023 Tunnels and Caves.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Identify cave.
- 2. Determine entry technique.
- 3. Select equipment.
- 4. Enter cave.
- 5. Survey cave.
- 6. Complete Cave Report.
- 7. Submit Cave Report.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

MW-ENVR-2001: Overcome leadership challenges

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, SGTMAJ, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-MCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR, NV-CDR, NV-CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a unit, and in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous/cold weather terrain.

STANDARD: Maintaining unit cohesion, efficiency, and morale.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Identify CCMT/cold weather leadership challenges.
- 2. Prevent CCMT/cold weather leadership challenges.
- 3. Determine solutions.
- 4. Resolve leadership challenges.

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1D Cold Region Operations

MW-ENVR-2002: Implement the principles of mountain safety

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

DESCRIPTION: Remember to utilize by the acronym "BE SAFE MARINE."

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT,
WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL, NV-SR, NV-

SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-MCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR, NV-CDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given T/O and T/E, in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain, and without the aid of references.

STANDARD: Maintaining combat effectiveness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Apply individual safety principles.
- 2. Apply group safety principles, as required.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

MW-ENVR-2003: Maintain mountain health

EVALUATION-CODED: NO · SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-MCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR, NV-CDR, NV-CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given T/O and T/E, and without the aid of references.

STANDARD: Preventing injuries, maintaining health, and preserving the fighting force to accomplish the mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Prevent altitude injuries.
- 2. Prevent CO poisoning.
- 3. Prevent mountain/cold weather injuries.
- 4. Treat mountain/cold weather injuries.
- 5. Maintain nutrition.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

MW-ENVR-2004: Assess the weather

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT,
WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL, NV-SR, NV-

SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-MCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR, NV-CDR, NV-CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: In complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: Accurately identifying weather patterns per MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Recognize indications of weather change.
- 2. Recognize the types of clouds.
- 3. Recognize the types of cloud progressions.
- 4. Recognize changes in temperature.
- 5. Recognize changes in pressure.
- 6. Recognize changes in humidity.
- 7. Recognize changes in wind.
- 8. Recognize changes in precipitation.
- 9. Evaluate impact of weather on operations.

REFERENCES:

- 1. FMFRP 3-29 U.S. Navy Oceanographic and Meteorological Support System Manual
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MW-ENVR-2005: Apply snow-covered concealment techniques

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-MCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LCDR, NV-CDR, NV-CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: In complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain, and with the aid of references.

<u>STANDARD</u>: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Chapter 6008 Camouflage, Cover, and Concealment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Determine requirements for camouflage, cover, and concealment measures.
- 2. Utilize overwhite techniques.
- 3. Utilize equipment camouflage techniques.

- 4. Utilize light discipline techniques.
- .5. Utilize noise discipline techniques.
- 6. Utilize thermal deception techniques.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: MW-CLEQ-2001

REFERENCES:

- 1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 2. MCWP 3-35.1 Mountain Warfare Operations

MW-ENVR-2006: Survey mountain terrain

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

BILLETS: Summer Mountain Leader, Winter Mountain Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT,

MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a requirement, topographic products, and T/E, in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: Providing required information per MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Determine the types of rock.
- 2. Determine mountain topography.
- 3. Determine glaciated terrain features.
- 4. Determine types of mountain obstacles.
- 5. Determine slope angle.
- 6. Determine classes of terrain.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

MW-ENVR-2007: Conduct a mountain leader meeting

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

BILLETS: Summer Mountain Leader, Winter Mountain Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given an audience, weather report, ambient temperature, avalanche forecast, commander's objectives and intent, topographic map, area of operation in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain.

STANDARD: Providing the commander with actionable information for decision making.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Assess hazards.
- 2. Analyze commander's objectives and intent.
- 3. Analyze past unit performance.
- 4. Forecast changes.
- 5. Recommend controls to mitigate risk.
- 6. Advise the commander on operational impact.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

		
MW-AVAL-2001	MW-AVAL-2002	MW-ENVR-2001
MW-ENVR-2002	MW-ENVR-2003	MW-ENVR-2004
MW-ENVR-2006		

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering

- 2. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 3. MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations
- 4. MCWP 3-35.1 Mountain Warfare Operations

MW-FIRE-2001: Employ a medium machinegun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given an operations order, medium machinegun, sectors of fire, and targets, while dismounted and wearing fighting a load in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain.

STANDARD: Achieving effects on target in three bursts.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Emplace machinegun on talus/rock and angles over 20 degrees.
- 2. Emplace machinegun in deep snow and on ice.
- 3. Engage a point target up-slope at angles greater than 20 degrees from a range of 400-700m.
- 4. Engage a point target down-slope at angles greater than 20 degrees from a range of 400-700m.
- 5. Engage targets in depth from a range of 1,200-1,800m across compartment on a slope greater than 15 degrees.
- 6. Engage targets in width from a range of 700-950m across compartment on a slope greater than 15 degrees.

- 7. Engage targets in width and depth from a range of 1,200-2,200m across compartment on a slope greater than 15 degrees.
- 8. Engage targets at temperatures below 32 degrees F.
- 9. Lubricate weapon for temperatures below freezing.
- 10. Perform remedial action.

REFERENCES:

- 1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC

Quantity

Al31 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace 2160 rounds per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

MW-FIRE-2002: Employ a mounted medium machinegun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given an order, medium machinegun, vehicle with mount, driver, ammo man, vehicle commander, sectors of fire, and targets while wearing a fighting load in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain.

STANDARD: Placing the beaten zone on one target in 30 seconds.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Engage targets up-slope at angles greater than 20 degrees by high marking a tire or tires on micro-terrain to be able to employ the T&E.
- 2. Engage targets up-slope at angles between 10 and 20 degrees.
- 3. Engage targets up-slope at angles greater than 20 degrees by free gun.

REFERENCES:

- 1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC

Quantity

A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace 300 rounds per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

MW-FIRE-2003: Employ a heavy machinegun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given an order, heavy machinegun, sectors of fire, and targets, while dismounted and wearing a fighting load in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain.

STANDARD: Maximizing the beaten zone on six targets.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Emplace machinegun on talus/rock and angles over 20 degrees.
- 2. Emplace machinegun in deep snow and on ice.
- 3. Engage a point target up-slope at angles greater than 20 degrees from a range of 400-700m.
- 4. Engage a point target down-slope at angles greater than 20 degrees from a range of 400-700m.
- 5. Engage targets in depth from a range of 1,200-1,800m across compartment on a slope greater than 15 degrees.
- 6. Engage targets in width from a range of 700-950m across compartment on a slope greater than 15 degrees.
- 7. Engage targets in width and depth from a range of 1,500-2,200m across compartment on a slope greater than 15 degrees.
- 8. Engage targets at temperatures below freezing.
- 9. Lubricate weapon below freezing.
- 10. Perform remedial action.

REFERENCES:

- 1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC Quantity

A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP 2100 rounds per crew B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin 1800 rounds per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

MW-FIRE-2004: Employ a mounted heavy machinegun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given an order, heavy machinegun, vehicle with mount, driver, ammo man, vehicle commander, sectors of fire, and targets, while wearing a fighting load in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain.

STANDARD: Placing the beaten zone on one target in 30 seconds.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Engage targets up-slope at angles greater than 20 degrees by high marking a tire or tires on micro-terrain to be able to employ the T&E.
- 2. Engage targets up-slope at angles between 10 and 20 degrees.
- 3. Engage targets up-slope at angles greater than 20 degrees by free gun.

REFERENCES:

- 1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin

Quantity
300 rounds per crew
96 rounds per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

MW-FIRE-2005: Adjust fire

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

BILLETS: Forward Observer

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 1STSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT,
WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: In complex, compartmentalized, mountainous, and/or snow-covered terrain.

STANDARD: Adjusting onto a target on a 20+ degree slope within four rounds.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select correct fuze or fuze mix for slope angle, snow depth, rock or ice cover, and/or avalanche initiation.
- 2. Adjust fire on slope angle above 40 degrees.
- 3. Adjust fire on a slope of 20+ degrees by walking rounds upslope, downslope, across a slope laterally and obliquely.
- 4. Orient a sheaf of fire correctly on a ridge line crest.
- 5. Orient a sheaf of fire correctly on a narrow draw on a 20+ degree slope.
- 6. Shift fire from a forward slope to the reverse slope.
- 7. Suppress a target on a hilltop or peak.
- 8. Select the correct ordnance to mark for CAS in snow.

REFERENCES:

- 1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 2. MCWP 3-35.1 Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	Quantity
B642 Cartridge, 60mm High Explosive M720	32 rounds per Marine
B643 Cartridge, 60mm High Explosive M888	32 rounds per Marine
C869 Cartridge, 81mm HE M889/M889A1 with	32 rounds per Marine
D540 Charge, Prop 155mm Green Bag M3A1	5 charges per Marine
N523 Primer, Percussion M82	5 primers per Marine
N340 Fuze, Point Detonating M739/M739A1	5 fuses per Marine
D544 Proj, 155mm High Explosive M107	5 projectiles per Marine

MW-HRST-2001: Conduct a fast rope descent

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a helicopter/tilt-rotor aircraft, T/E, and fast rope.

STANDARD: Reaching bottom without injury to self or loss/damage to equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Prepare equipment.
- 2. Implement safeties.
- 3. FAST Rope from the helicopter on command.
- 4. Perform follow-on actions.

REFERENCES:

- MCO 3500.42A W/ ERRATUM Marine Corps Helicopter Rope Suspension Training Policy (HRST) and Program Administration
- 2. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

AIRCRAFT: CH-46, CH-53, UH-1, MV-22

EQUIPMENT: HRST equipment, gloves

MW-HRST-2002: Conduct a special purpose insertion/extraction (SPIE)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a helicopter/tilt-rotor aircraft, T/E, and HRST equipment.

STANDARD: Without injury to self or loss/damage to equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- Implement safeties.
- 2. Inspect equipment.
- 3. Don SPIE equipment.
- 4. Attach harness to rope.
- 5. Perform HRST hand and arm signals.
- 6. Detach harness from rope.

REFERENCES:

- 1. MCO 3500.42A W/ ERRATUM Marine Corps Helicopter Rope Suspension Training Policy (HRST) and Program Administration
- 2. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

AIRCRAFT: CH-46, CH-53, UH-1, MV-22

MW-HRST-2003: Rig a helicopter/tilt-rotor aircraft for fast-roping

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Assigned as a Rope Master for the HRST operation

BILLETS: HRST Master

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a helicopter/tilt-rotor aircraft, HRST equipment, and T/E, and with the aid of references.

<u>STANDARD</u>: In accordance with MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations Chapter 5 Fast Rope Operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Inspect the aircraft attachment points.

- 2. Select equipment.
- 3. Inspect equipment.
- 4. Rig fast-rope.

REFERENCES:

- 1. MCO 3500.42 Marine Corps HRST Policy and Program Administration
- 2. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

AIRCRAFT: CH-46, CH-53, UH-1, MV-22

EQUIPMENT: Communication Equipment, HRST Kit

MW-HRST-2004: Manage helicopter/tilt rotor fast-rope operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: HRST Master

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a helicopter/tilt-rotor aircraft, HRST equipment, a single channel radio, and T/E, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations Chapter 5 Fast Rope Operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Ensure installation inspection is conducted.
- 2. Give a HRST brief.
- 3. Communicate with aircraft.
- 4. Supervise donning of individual HRST equipment.
- 5. Assign ropers to each point.
- 6. Demonstrate fast-rope.
- 7. Perform emergency procedures, if required.
- 8. Recover system, as required.

REFERENCES:

- 1. MCO 3500.42 Marine Corps HRST Policy and Program Administration
- 2. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

AIRCRAFT: CH-46, CH-53, UH-1, MV-22

EQUIPMENT: Communication Equipment, HRST Kit

MW-HRST-2005: Manage helicopter/tilt-rotor rappelling operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: HRST Master

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-PO3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a helicopter/tilt-rotor aircraft, HRST equipment, a single channel radio, and T/E, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations Chapter 4 Helicopter Rappelling Operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Ensure installation inspection is conducted.
- 2. Give a HRST brief.
- 3. Communicate with aircraft.
- 4. Supervise donning of individual HRST equipment.
- 5. Assign ropers to each point.
- 6. Demonstrate rappel.
- 7. Perform emergency procedures, if required.
- 8. Recover system, as required.

REFERENCES:

- 1. MCO 3500.42 Marine Corps HRST Policy and Program Administration
- 2. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

AIRCRAFT: CH-46, CH-53, UH-1, MV-22

EQUIPMENT: Communication Equipment, MACK and HRST Kit

MW-HRST-2006: Rig a helicopter/tilt-rotor for SPIE

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: HRST Master

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-PO3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a helicopter/tilt-rotor aircraft, HRST equipment, and T/E, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations Chapter 6 Special Patrol Insertion and Extraction Operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Inspect the aircraft and all attachment points.
- Select equipment.
- 3. Inspect equipment.
- 4. Rig for SPIE.

REFERENCES:

- 1. MCO 3500.42 Marine Corps HRST Policy and Program Administration
- 2. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

AIRCRAFT: CH-46, CH-53, UH-1, MV-22

EQUIPMENT: HRST Kit

<u>MW-HRST-2007</u>: Manage special patrol insertion and extraction (SPIE) operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: HRST Master

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a helicopter/tilt-rotor aircraft, HRST equipment, single channel radio, personnel, and T/E, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations Chapter 6 Special Patrol Insertion and Extraction Operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Ensure installation inspection conducted.
- 2. Give a HRST brief.
- 3. Communicate with aircrew.
- 4. Supervise donning of individual HRST equipment.
- 5. Assign ropers to each point.
- 6. Perform emergency procedures, if required.
- 7. Recover equipment, as required.

REFERENCES:

- 1. MCO 3500.42 Marine Corps HRST Policy and Program Administration
- 2. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

AIRCRAFT: CH-46CH-53UH-1MV-22

EQUIPMENT: Communication Equipment, HRST Kit

MW-HRST-2008: Rig a helicopter for a Jacob's Ladder

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: HRST Master

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-1, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a helicopter, HRST equipment, and T/E, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations Chapter 7 Jacob's Ladder Operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Inspect the aircraft attachment points.
- 2. Select equipment.
- 3. Inspect equipment.
- 4. Rig Jacob's Ladder.

REFERENCES:

- 1. MCO 3500.42 Marine Corps HRST Policy and Program Administration
- 2. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

AIRCRAFT: CH-46, CH-53, UH-1

EQUIPMENT: MACK and HRST Kit

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Jacob's Ladder operations are limited to reconnaissance units only. All personnel involved must be qualified at least a WSA.

MW-HRST-2009: Manage Jacob's Ladder operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: HRST Master

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-PO3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a helicopter, HRST equipment, single channel radio, personnel, and T/E, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations Chapter 7 Jacob's Ladder Operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Ensure installation inspection conducted.
- 2. Give a HRST brief.
- 3. Communicate with aircrew.
- 4. Supervise donning of individual HRST equipment.
- 5. Assign ropers to each point.
- 6. Perform emergency procedures, if required.
- 7. Recover equipment, as required.

REFERENCES:

- 1. MCO 3500.42 Marine Corps HRST Policy and Program Administration
- 2. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

AIRCRAFT: CH-46, CH-53, UH-1

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Wet SPIE operations are limited to reconnaissance units only. All personnel involved must be qualified at least a WSA.

MW-HRST-2010: Supervise safety of HRST operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Safety Insert Officer (SIO)

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 1STSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a helicopter/tilt-rotor aircraft, HRST equipment, single channel radio, personnel, and T/E, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Inspect equipment.
- 2. Inspect rigging.
- 3. Give final clearance for all HRST operations.
- 4. Supervise all operations.
- 5. Communicate with aircrew.

REFERENCES:

- 1. MCO 3500.42 Marine Corps HRST Policy and Program Administration
- 2. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

MW-HRST-2011: Manage helicopter rope suspension techniques (HRST) equipment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: HRST Master

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given HRST equipment and cleaning materials.

STANDARD: Maintaining serviceability and completeness of HRST equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Inspect equipment.
- 2. Replace unserviceable equipment.
- 3. Clean equipment.
- 4. Maintain equipment records.
- 5. Stow equipment.

REFERENCES:

- 1. MCO 3500.42A W/ ERRATUM Marine Corps Helicopter Rope Suspension Training Policy (HRST) and Program Administration
- 2. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ROOMS/BUILDINGS: HRST Locker

MW-MOVE-2001: Move over mountainous terrain

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-MCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR, NV-CDR, NV-CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given T/E in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain.

STANDARD: Without injury to self or loss/damage to equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Make individual preparations.
- 2. Determine slope type.
- 3. Determine slope approach angle.
- 4. Perform movement techniques.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEO-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

MW-ENVR-2004

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers
 7th Edition 2nd Printing
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MW-MOVE-2002: Employ snow shoes

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-MCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LCDR, NV-CDR, NV-CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given snowshoes, ski poles, and T/E in snow-covered, complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Part VII Military Snowshoeing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Make individual preparations.
- 2. Perform snowshoe movement techniques.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MW-MOVE-2003: Employ skis

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-MCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LCDR, NV-CDR, NV-CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given skis, ski poles, MCCWIK, references, and T/E, and in snow-covered, complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations Chapter 5 Ski Techniques.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Make individual preparations.
- 2. Apply kick wax.
- 3. Ski.
- 4. Employ skins.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-CLEQ-2004

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003 REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MW-MOVE-2004: Cross a stream

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-MCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR, NV-CDR, NV-CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stream and T/E.

STANDARD: Reaching the far side without injury or loss/damage to equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Make individual preparations.
- 2. Utilize individual crossing methods.
- 3. Utilize team crossing methods.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEO-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: For this training to be conducted an area that facilitates single and team crossing techniques, provides near and far side anchors for safety lines, and does not flow into a hazard that would prevent an individual from rescuing himself/herself.

MW-MOVE-2005: Negotiate a snow/ice-covered water obstacle

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-MCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR, NV-CDR, NV-CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a snow/ice-covered water obstacle and T/E.

STANDARD: Reaching far side without injury to self or loss/damage to equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Make individual preparations.
- 2. Employ safety measures.
- 3. Cross obstacle.
- 4. Perform a self rescue, as required.
- 5. Perform a buddy rescue, as required.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-CLEQ-2002 MW-ENVR-2001 MW-ENVR-2003 MW-ENVR-2004

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MW-MOVE-2006: Bivouac in a snow-covered environment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 1STSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-MCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR, NV-CDR, NV-CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given references, a MCCWIK, and T/E, and in snow-covered terrain.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Chapter 6004 Shelters & Fires.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Make site selection.
- 2. Organize support requirements.
- 3. Establish security.
- 4. Establish track plan.
- 5. Construct defensive positions.
- 6. Construct tent team living area.
- 7. Establish special use areas.
- 8. Complete track plan.
- 9. Establish a bivouac routine.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-CLEQ-2002 MW-ENVR-2001 MW-ENVR-2002 MW-ENVR-2003 MW-ENVR-2004

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MW-MOVE-2007: Conduct a mountain casualty evacuation (CASEVAC)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-MCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR, NV-CDR, NV-CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a casualty and T/E in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: Without further injury to casualty and in accordance with MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Part IX Casualty Evacuation in Mountain Warfare Operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Assess the safety of the accident/incident scene.
- 2. Apply first aid, as required.
- 3. Prepare casualty for movement.
- 4. Prepare litter for hoisting.
- 5. Perform litter carries.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEO-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MW-MOVE-2008: Move over glaciated terrain

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 1 month

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-MCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LCDR, NV-CDR, NV-CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a T/E and MACK while operating on a glacier.

STANDARD: Without injury to self or loss/damage to equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Make individual preparations.
- 2. Employ snow and ice equipment.
- 3. Glissade.
- 4. Perform self-arrest.

- 5. Utilize rope team techniques.
- 6. Utilize gang haul techniques.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-AVAL-2001	MW-AVAL-2002	MW-CLEQ-2001
MW-CLEQ-2002	MW-CLEQ-2003	MW-ENVR-2001
MW-ENVR-2002	MW-ENVR-2003	MW-ENVR-2004
MW-ENVR-2005	MW-ENVR-2006	MW-TRST-2001
MW-TRST-2002	MW-TRST-2003	

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MW-MOVE-2009: Supervise skijoring

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5,
2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-ENS,
NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given skis, poles, rope, over-the-snow vehicle, and T/E in snow-covered terrain, and without the aid of references.

STANDARD: Without injury to participants or loss/damage to equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Make individual preparations.
- 2. Inspect skijoring rigging.
- 3. Observe individuals skijoring.
- 4. Communicate.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-ENVR-2002 MW-ENVR-2003 MW-MOVE-2003

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MW-MOVE-2010: Operate an over-the-snow vehicle

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT,
WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an over-the-snow vehicle in snow-covered terrain.

STANDARD: Reaching destination without injury to self or others and without loss/damage to equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Conduct operations checks.
- 2. Employ safety equipment.
- 3. Negotiate varying terrain.
- 4. Negotiate water obstacles.
- 5. Pull load, as required.
- 6. Perform post-operation checks and services.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-AVAL-2001

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2002

REFERENCES:

- 1. X-FILE 3-35.11 Small Unit Support Vehicle (SUSV)
- 2. Applicable Technical Manuals

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17906 Wheeled Vehicle Drivers Course

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

Facility Code 17907 Tracked Vehicle Drivers Course

MW-MOVE-2011: Perform Military Skier techniques

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

BILLETS: Scout Skier, Winter Mountain Leader

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, SGTMAJ, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-MCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given ski equipment and T/E in snow-covered complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations Chapter 5 Ski Techniques.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Make individual preparations.
- 2. Perform downhill techniques.
- 3. Perform flat ground techniques.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

MW-MOVE-2003

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MW-MOVE-2012: Manage a snow-covered defensive position

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT,

MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}}$: Given an order, personnel, and T/E in snow-covered terrain, and with the aid of references.

<u>STANDARD</u>: Meeting mission requirements and in accordance with MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Section 31006 Patrol Bases.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Conduct leader reconnaissance.
- 2. Implement security requirements.
- 3. Identify dummy positions.
- 4. Establish trench plan.
- 5. Designate living areas.
- 6. Designate special use areas.
- 7. Supervise continuing actions.
- 8. Plan for operations.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: '

MW-AVAL-2001	MW-AVAL-2002	MW-CLEQ-2001
MW-CLEQ-2002	MW-ENVR-2001	MW-ENVR-2002
MW-ENVR-2003	MW-ENVR-2004	MW-ENVR-2005

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MW-MOVE-2013: Manage a stream crossing site

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5,
2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stream, personnel, references, and T/E.

<u>STANDARD</u>: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Chapter 3007 Stream Crossing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select a crossing site.
- 2. Implement safety/control measures.
- 3. Select the crossing technique to be used.
- 4. Organize personnel for crossing.
- 5. Observe the crossing of Marines.
- 6. Ensure accountability of personnel on far side.
- 7. Ensure equipment is retrieved, as required.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

MW-ENVR-2004

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MW-MOVE-2014: Manage a snow/ice covered water obstacle crossing site

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

BILLETS: Winter Mountain Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT,
MAJ, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given personnel, references, a MCCWIK, and T/E, in snow/ice-covered water obstacle.

<u>STANDARD</u>: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Section 3007 Stream Crossing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select a crossing site.
- 2. Implement safety/control measures.
- 3. Select crossing technique to be used.
- 4. Organize personnel for crossing.
- 5. Supervise the crossing.
- 6. Retrieve equipment.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001	MW-CLEQ-2002	MW-ENGO-2002
MW-ENVR-2001	MW-ENVR-2002	MW-ENVR-2003
MW-ENVR-2004	MW-ENVR-2005	MW-MOVE-2005

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

MW-MOVE-2015: Lead a group over glaciated terrain

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

BILLETS: Summer Mountain Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a rope team, references, a MACK and T/E, in glaciated terrain.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Section 3024 Alpine Movement.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Conduct hazard assessment.
- 2. Select route.
- 3. Choose travel technique.
- 4. Conduct individual/group preparations.
- 5. Employ snow/ice protection if necessary.
- 6. Organize group for rescue.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-ENVR-2002 MW-ENVR-2003 MW-MOVE-2008

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MW-MOVE-2016: Lead a group through mountainous terrain

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

BILLETS: Summer Mountain Leader, Winter Mountain Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT,

MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a team, a MACK and T/E in mountainous terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Chapter 3000 Movement and Maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Conduct hazard assessment.
- 2. Select route.
- 3. Choose travel technique.
- 4. Conduct individual/group preparations.
- 5. Employ protection if necessary.
- 6. Organize group for rescue.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-ENVR-2001 MW-ENVR-2002 MW-ENVR-2003 MW-ENVR-2004 MW-ENVR-2006

MW-MOVE-2001

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MW-MOVE-2017: Lead a cliff assault

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months BILLETS: Assault Climber, Summer Mountain Leader

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT,
CAPT, MAJ, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an order, MACK, T/O, T/E, and a vertical obstacle, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with X-File 3-35.21 Cliff Assault.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Conduct planning.
- 2. Task organize.
- 3. Designate lanes.
- 4. Assign technique for each lane.
- 5. Implement safety/control measures.
- 6. Supervise lane installation.
- 7. Report status of lanes.
- 8. Supervise follow-on actions.

PREREOUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001	MW-CLMB-2009	MW-CLMB-2012
MW-CLMB-2013	MW-ENVR-2002	MW-ENVR-2003
MW-TRST-2001	MW-TRST-2002	MW-TRST-2003
MW-TRST-2004	MW-TRST-2005	MW-TRST-2006
MW-TRST-2007	MW-TRST-2008	MW-TRST-2009
MW-TRST-2010		

REFERENCES:

- 1. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

MW-MOVE-2018: Perform heliborne/tilt-rotor insertion

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>DESCRIPTION:</u> This event includes the individual techniques conducted during a close debarkation of a helicopter or tilt-rotor aircraft, and actions in the LZ. This technique is commonly referred to as the "Akhio Huddle".

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT,
WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a landing zone, over-snow-mobility equipment, and cold weather clothing and equipment.

STANDARD: Without injury or loss/damage to equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Make personal preparations.
- 2. Debark.
- 3. Stage equipment.
- 4. Huddle.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-CLEQ-2002 MW-ENVR-2001 MW-ENVR-2002 MW-ENVR-2003 MW-ENVR-2004

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

MW-MOVE-2019: Perform heliborne/tilt-rotor extraction

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>DESCRIPTION</u>: This event includes the individual techniques conducted during a close embarkation of a helicopter or tilt-rotor aircraft, and actions in the LZ. This technique is commonly referred to as the "Akhio Huddle".

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a landing zone, over-snow-mobility equipment, and cold weather clothing and equipment.

STANDARD: Without injury or loss/damage to equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Prepare landing zone.
- 2. Stage equipment.
- 3. Make personal preparations.
- 4. Huddle.
- 5. Embark.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-CLEQ-2002 MW-ENVR-2001 MW-ENVR-2002 MW-ENVR-2003 MW-ENVR-2004

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

MW-SURV-2001: Prepare for survival

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-MCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR, NV-CDR, NV-CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given T/E in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with FM 21-76 Survival Chapter 3 Survival Planning and Survival Kits.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Determine the personal preparations for survival.
- 2. Construct a personal survival kit.
- 3. Execute pre-mission planning responsibilities.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. FM 21-76 Survival
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

MW-SURV-2002: Construct survival fires

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a survival kit and T/E, and without the aid of references.

STANDARD: In performance step sequence.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Gather materials.
- 2. Prepare fire lay.
- 3. Light a survival fire.
- 4. Maintain a survival fire.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. FM 21-76 Survival
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

MW-SURV-2003: Procure potable water

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT,
WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a survival kit and T/E, and without the aid of the references.

STANDARD: Preventing dehydration.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Determine sources of water.
- 2. Avoid hazardous fluids.
- 3. Determine water quality.
- 4. Collect water.
- 5. Process water.
- 6. Construct a water generator, as required.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEO-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0801670446 Wilderness Medicine: Management of Wilderness and Environmental Emergencies
- 2. FM 21-76 Survival
- 3. JP 3-50.3 Evasion and Recovery 1996
- 4. MCRP 3-02H Survival, Evasion, and Recovery
- 5. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 6. X-FILE 3-35.22 Water Procurement

MW-SURV-2004: Utilize a survival shelter

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a survival kit and T/E, and without the aid of references.

STANDARD: Which provides effective protection from the elements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Assess tactical situation.
- 2. Assess available resources.
- 3. Gather materials.
- 4. Construct shelter, as required.

- 5. Occupy shelter.
- 6. Maintain shelter.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. SAS Survival Guide; John Wiesman, 1993
- 2. FM 21-76 Survival
- 3. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

MW-SURV-2005: Procure game

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT,
WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a survival kit and T/E, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with JP 3-50.3 Evasion and Recovery 1996.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Determine available meat sources.
- 2. Determine the considerations to take game.
- 3. Employ a snare.
- 4. Employ a hunting device.
- 5. Dispatch game, as required.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEO-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0011088 Snares and Snaring
- 2. JP 3-50.3 Evasion and Recovery 1996
- 3. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

MW-SURV-2006: Procure fish

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT,
WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}}$: Given a survival kit, T/E, and a body of water, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with JP 3-50.3 Evasion and Recovery 1996.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Determine fishing locations.
- 2. Acquire fishing bait.
- 3. Assemble fishing equipment.
- 4. Catch fish.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. JP 3-50.3 Evasion and Recovery 1996
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

MW_SURV-2007: Construct expedient survival implements

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a survival kit and T/E, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Section 6003 Survival.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Determine requirements.
- 2. Identify available materials.
- 3. Gather materials.
- 4. Construct implement.
- 5. Test implement.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. FM 21-76 Survival
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

MW-SURV-2008: Subsist on plants

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT,
WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a survival kit and T/E, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: Maintaining health.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Determine edible plants.
- 2. Prepare plant for consumption.
- 3. Consume an edible plant.
- 4. Determine medicinal plants.
- 5. Prepare a plant for medicinal purposes.
- 6. Apply medicinal plant.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEO-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-520-05569-1 Poisonous Plants of California
- 2. FM 21-76 Survival

MW-SURV-2009: Subsist on insects

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT,
WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a survival kit and T/E.

STANDARD: Maintaining health.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Determine edible insects.
- 2. Collect edible insects.
- 3. Prepare insects for consumption.
- 4. Consume an edible insect.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. FM 21-76 Survival
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

MW-SURV-2010: Prepare animal for consumption

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a survival kit and T/E in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain, and without the aid of references.

STANDARD: Avoiding sickness from eating the prepared food.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Field dress animal.
- 2. Select parts that can be used for human consumption.
- 3. Select cooking technique.
- 4. Preserve food.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001	MW-ENVR-2002	MW-ENVR-2003
MW-SURV-2005	MW-SURV-2006	MW-SURV-2008
MW-SURV-2009		

REFERENCES:

- 1. SAS Survival Guide; John Wiesman, 1993
- 2. 0801670446 Wilderness Medicine: Management of Wilderness and Environmental Emergencies
- 3. B0006QT1D0 Field Manual of Wilderness Diseases in the Southeastern United States, 2nd edition, 1997.
- 4. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

MW-SURV-2011: Apply mountain survival medicine techniques

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT,
WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a survival kit and T/E in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain, and without the aid of references.

STANDARD: Preventing injuries and preserving the fighting force to accomplish the mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Prevent medical problems.
- 2. Treat medical problems.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-ENVR-2002 MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. B0006QT1D0 Field Manual of Wilderness Diseases in the Southeastern United States, 2nd edition, 1997.
- 2. FM 21-76 Survival
- 3. Wilderness Medicine, 4th Edition, Wm. Forgey M.D., ICS Books Inc., Merrillville, IN 1994

MW-SURV-2012: Navigate in a survival situation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT,
WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a designated location, survival kit, and T/E, and without the aid of references or conventional navigational aids.

STANDARD: Reaching designated location.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Determine approximate location.
- 2. Decide direction of travel.
- 3. Select a navigation method.
- 4. Orient on direction of travel.
- 5. Navigate to designated location.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. The Essential Wilderness Navigator. David Seidmond; 1995
- 2. FM 21-76 Survival
- 3. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

MW-SURV-2013: Signal for recovery

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT,
WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a survival kit and T/E, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-02H Survival, Evasion and Recovery Chapter III Communications and Signaling.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Determine appropriate signal.
- 2. Construct a signaling device, as required.
- 3. Communicate with signaling device.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. FM 21-76 Survival
- 2. JP 3-50.1 National SAR Manual Volume II
- 3. JP 3-50.3 Evasion and Recovery 1996

MW-SURV-2014: Perform tracking

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT,
WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a requirement and T/E, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations Section 2002 Tracking.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Identify signs and spoor.
- 2. Collect forensic evidence.
- 3. Conduct follow-up operations.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0425099660 Tom Brown's Field Guide to Nature Observation and Tracking
- 2. 96-90686 Tactical Tracking Operations
- 3. MCRP 3-02H Survival, Evasion, and Recovery

MW-SURV-2015: Facilitate recovery

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT,
WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a survival kit and T/E, and without the aid of references.

STANDARD: Safely linking up with recovery forces.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Employ recovery communications.
- 2. Prepare for recovery.
- Conduct link-up procedures.
 Employ recovery equipment, as required.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-ENVR-2002 MW-ENVR-2003 MW-SURV-2001 MW-SURV-2011 MW-SURV-2013

REFERENCES:

- 1. FM 21-76 Survival
- 2. JP 3-50.1 National SAR Manual Volume II
- 3. JP 3-50.3 Evasion and Recovery 1996
- 4. MCRP 3-02H Survival, Evasion, and Recovery

MW-TRST-2001: Utilize knots

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR, NV-CDR, NV-CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a rope and T/E, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Section 3001 Rope Management, Knots, and Anchors.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Tie knots.
- 2. Dress knots.
- 3. Set knots.
- 4. Untie knots.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEO-2001 MW-CLEQ-2003 MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing
- 2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 3. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

MW-TRST-2002: Utilize an anchor

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

BILLETS: Assault Climber, Summer Mountain Leader

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5,
2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MACK and T/E, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Section 3001 Rope Management, Knots, and Anchors.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select site.
- 2. Select anchor type.
- 3. Select equipment.
- 4. Build anchor.
- 5. Recover anchor.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-CLEQ-2003 MW-ENVR-2002 MW-ENVR-2003 MW-TRST-2001 MW-TRST-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing
- 2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 3. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MW-TRST-2003: Employ protection

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MACK and T/E, in complex, compartmentalized, mountainous terrain, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select protection.
- 2. Utilize protection.
- 3. Remove protection, as required.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: MW-TRST-2001

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

MW-TRST-2001

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MW-TRST-2004: Conduct a rappel

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a rappel lane, T/E, harness, two carabiners, gloves, Prusik loop, and without the aid of references.

STANDARD: Reaching bottom of rappel lane without injury or loss/damage to equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select rappel method.
- 2. Prepare for rappel.
- 3. Attach to rope.
- 4. Rappel without gloves.
- 5. Detach from rope.
- 6. Transition.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-TRST-2001 MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing

- 2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 3. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area Facility Code 17917 Rappelling Training Area

EQUIPMENT: MACK

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Marine performing task will need at least one locking carabiner for the harness. The second carabiner may be locking or non-locking as required.

MW-TRST-2005: Cross a one-rope bridge

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a one-rope bridge, a sling rope, two locking carabiners, and T/E, and without the aid of references.

STANDARD: Reaching the distant end without injury or loss of equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select crossing technique.
- 2. Prepare for crossing.
- 3. Attach a load.
- 4. Cross.
- 5. Detach a load.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-TRST-2001 MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MW-TRST-2006: Operate a raising/lowering system

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, WO, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a raising/lowering system, load to be moved, and T/E, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: Required load consolidated on the top or bottom of the obstacle per MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Perform individual preparations.
- 2. Prepare load for movement.
- 3. Attach load.
- 4. Move load.
- 5. Remove load.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2002 MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MW-TRST-2007: Establish a rappel lane

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months EVALUATION-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Assault Climber, HRST, SRST, Summer Mountain Leader

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MACK or HRST Kit, T/E, 3rd to 5th class terrain or a vertical obstacle, and without the aid of references.

STANDARD: In performance step sequence.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Determine type of rappel.
- 2. Implement site safety/control measures.
- 3. Select support requirement.

- 4. Establish rappel.
- 5. Establish a releasable anchor.
- 6. Conduct rappel brief.
- 7. Convert rappel site for retrieval, as required.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-ENVR-2002 MW-ENVR-2003 MW-TRST-2001 MW-TRST-2002 MW-TRST-2003 MW-TRST-2004

REFERENCES:

- 1. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 2. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area Facility Code 17917 Rappelling Training Area

MW-TRST-2008: Establish a height-gaining device

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

BILLETS: Assault Climber, Summer Mountain Leader

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, CWO5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an obstacle, MACK, and T/E, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Implement site safety/control measures.
- 2. Determine type of height-gaining device available.
- 3. Select components.
- 4. Incorporate components.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-ENVR-2002 MW-ENVR-2003 MW-TRST-2001 MW-TRST-2002

REFERENCES:

- 1. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MW-TRST-2009: Establish a high-tension rope installation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a horizontal obstacle, MACK and T/E, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select a site.
- 2. Select installation type.
- 3. Select support requirements.
- 4. Implement site safety/control measures.
- 5. Employ a height-gaining device, if needed.
- 6. Build high-tension rope installation.
- 7. Tension the system.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001	MW-ENVR-2002	MW-ENVR-2003
MW-TRST-2001	MW-TRST-2002	MW-TRST-2003
MW-TRST-2005		•

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing
- 2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 3. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MISCELLANEOUS:

<u>ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS</u>: Recoverability of bridge is mission-dependent.

MW-TRST-2010: Manage a raising/lowering system

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

BILLETS: Assault Climber, Summer Mountain Leader

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO2, CWO3, CWO4, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, NV-SR, NV-SA, NV-SN, NV-PO-3, NV-PO-2, NV-PO-1, NV-CPO, NV-SCPO, NV-ENS, NV-LTJG, NV-LT, NV-LCDR

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a vertical obstacle, MACK, and T/E, and with the aid of references.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Select a site
- 2. Select system type.
- 3. Select support requirements.
- 4. Implement site safety/control measures.
- 5. Employ a height gaining device, if needed.
- 6. Build system.
- 7. Tension the system, as required.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001	MW-CLEQ-2003	MW-ENVR-2002
MW-ENVR-2003	MW-TRST-2001	MW-TRST-2002
MW-TRST-2003	MW-TRST-2008	

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing
- 2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 3. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MISCELLANEOUS:

<u>ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS</u>: Recoverability of system is mission-dependent.

MWO T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 5

MOUNTAIN WARFARE INSTRUCTOR INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
PURPOSE	. 5000	5-2
EVENT CODING	. 5001	5-2
INDEX OF EVENTS	. 5002	5-3
2000-LEVEL EVENTS	. 5003	5-4

MWO T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 5

MOUNTAIN WARFARE INSTRUCTOR INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

- **5000. PURPOSE.** This chapter contains individual training events for Mountain Warfare Instructors.
- **5001. EVENT CODING.** Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with an up to 12-digit, 3-field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX. In some cases, all 12 digits may not be used. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:
- a. Field one. Each event starts with MWI, indicating that the event is for Mountain Warfare Instructors.
- b. Field two. This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. In this chapter, the functional areas are as follows:

Code	Description	Example
AVAL	Avalanche Identification	MWI-AVAL-25XX
CLMB	Climbing	MWI-CLMB-25XX
MOVE	Movement & Loading	MWI-MOVE-25XX

c. Field three. All individual events within T&R Manuals are either 1000-level for events taught at MOS-producing formal schools or 2000-level for events taught at advanced-level schools or MOJT. This chapter contains 2000-level events.

5002. INDEX OF EVENTS

Event Code	Event	Page
	2000-LEVEL	
MWI-AVAL-2501	Recover multiple avalanche victims	5-4
MWI-AVAL-2502	Lead an alpine rescue	5-5
MWI-CLMB-2501	Lead a 5.6 multi-pitch climb	5-6
MWI-CLMB-2502	Lead a 5.8 multi-pitch climb	5-6
MWI-CLMB-2503	Conduct basic rock climbing rescues	5-7
MWI-CLMB-2504	Conduct complex rock climbing rescues	5~8
MWI-MOVE-2501	Lead an intermediate ski movement	5-9
MWI-MOVE-2502	Lead an advanced ski movement	5-10
MWI-MOVE-2503	Lead an alpine grade II, AI/WI1 level climb	5-11
MWI-MOVE-2504	Lead an alpine grade III, AI/WI/M2 level climb	5-12
MWI-MOVE-2505	Conduct basic crevasse rescue	5-13
MWI-MOVE-2506	Conduct advanced crevasse rescue	5-14
MWI-MOVE-2507	Perform Basic Ski Instructor (BSI) techniques	5-15
MWI-MOVE-2508	Perform Military Ski Instructor (MSI) techniques	5-16

5003. 2000-LEVEL EVENTS

MWI-AVAL-2501: Recover multiple avalanche victims

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

BILLETS: Winter Mountain Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given references, military ski equipment, an assault load, an avalanche transceivers, probe and shovel, an inexperienced rescuer on military ski equipment with an assault load, an avalanche transceiver, probe and shovel, and two fully-buried avalanche victims wearing avalanche transceivers in a snow-covered mountainous environment.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Appendix B Avalanche Avoidance, Search, and Rescue.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Assess the scene.
- 2. Ensure transceivers are in search mode.
- 3. Identify last point seen.
- 4. Conduct the signal search for the strongest signal.
- 5. Conduct the coarse search.
- 6. Conduct the fine search.
- 7. Pinpoint the victim location with a probe.
- 8. Delegate strategic shoveling of the first victim.
- 9. Conduct the signal search for the second victim.
- 10. Conduct the coarse search for the second victim.
- 11. Conduct the fine search for the second victim.
- 12. Pinpoint the second victim location with a probe.
- 13. Conduct strategic shoveling for the second victim.
- 14. Provide first aid.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2003

MW-ENVR-2002

REFERENCES:

- 1. The American Institute for Avalanche Research and Education Level 2 Student Manual
- 2. 0-89886-364-3 The Avalanche Handbook
- 3. 1-59485-038-7 Backcountry Skiing: Skills for Ski Touring and Ski Mountaineering
- 4. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations
- 5. MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

ROOMS/BUILDINGS: A classroom with computer aided graphics is preferred.

MISCELLANEOUS:

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Students must be Snow 2 and AIARE Level 2 graduates, and Military Ski Instructors (MSI).

MWI-AVAL-2502: Lead an alpine rescue

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

BILLETS: Summer Mountain Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given references, a rescue mission, a rescue team with assault loads, a SKED, military climbing equipment and a climbing rope; and in glaciated high altitude terrain.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Chapter 3000 Movement and Maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Assess the scene.
- 2. Organize the team.
- 3. Provide first aid.
- 4. Manage evacuation of the victim.
- 5. Manage transitions.
- 6. Maintain control of the rescue.
- 7. Manage the safety of the group.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2003

MW-ENVR-2002

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
- 2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 3. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MISCELLANEOUS:

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Students must be Alpine 2 graduates.

MWI-CLMB-2501: Lead a 5.6 multi-pitch climb

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

BILLETS: Summer Mountain Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given references, a climbing rope, military climbing equipment, an inexperienced climbing partner with an assault load, and in mountainous terrain with a rock face no less than 300 ft rated 5.6 YDS.

<u>STANDARD</u>: Belaying followers, managing all equipment and transitions, and managing the safety of the climbing party in accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Prepare a route sketch.
- 2. Identify the route.
- 3. Conduct a pre-climb brief.
- 4. Set up the rope for two party climbing.
- 5. Conduct a safety check.
- 6. Climb.
- 7. Employ protection.
- 8. Establish suitable top-side anchors and belays.
- 9. Manage a multi-pitch rappel.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2003

MW-ENVR-2002

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-743-6 Rock Climbing: Mastering Basic Skills
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MISCELLANEOUS:

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Students must be Summer Mountain Leader Course (M7A) graduates.

MWI-CLMB-2502: Lead a 5.8 multi-pitch climb

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given references, two climbing ropes, military climbing equipment, two inexperienced climbing partners with assault loads, in mountainous terrain with a rock face no less than 300 ft rated 5.8 YDS.

STANDARD: Belaying followers, managing all equipment and transitions, and managing the safety of the climbing party in accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Prepare a route sketch.
- 2. Identify the route.
- 3. Conduct a pre-climb brief.
- 4. Set up the rope for three party climbing.
- 5. Conduct a safety check.
- 6. Utilize proper climbing commands.
- 7. Climb.
- 8. Employ protection.
- 9. Establish suitable top-side anchors and belays.
- 10. Manage a multi-pitch rappel.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MWI-CLMB-2501

MW-ENVR-2003

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-CLEQ-2001

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-743-6 Rock Climbing: Mastering Basic Skills
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MISCELLANEOUS:

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Students must be Rock 2 graduates.

MWI-CLMB-2503: Conduct basic rock climbing rescues

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>DESCRIPTION</u>: A basic rock climbing rescue is one pitch, without significant cliff face obstacles/projections, and less than 5.6.

BILLETS: Summer Mountain Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given references, a climbing rope, military climbing equipment, an injured climber, a suitable rock face, and in mountainous terrain.

<u>STANDARD</u>: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Chapter 3000 Movement and Maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Assess the situation.
- 2. Conduct a climber pick-off.
- 3. Provide a belay assist.
- 4. Lower a climber.
- 5. Escape the belay to baseline.
- 6. Conduct a simple hauling system.
- 7. Return to baseline.
- 8. Assume the belay.
- 9. Adapt the application as required.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2003

MW-ENVR-2002

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-743-6 Rock Climbing: Mastering Basic Skills
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MISCELLANEOUS:

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Students must be Summer Mountain Leader Course (M7A) graduates.

MWI-CLMB-2504: Conduct complex rock climbing rescues

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>DESCRIPTION</u>: A complex rock climbing rescue is multi-pitch, with significant cliff face obstacles/projections, and 5.6 or more. A complex hauling system is one that requires multiple ropes, passing the knot, and overcoming significant cliff face obstacles and/or angle changes.

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given references, a climbing rope, military climbing equipment, an injured climbing partner with an assault load, a suitable rock face, and in mountainous terrain.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to
Mountain Warfare Operations Chapter 3000 Movement and Maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Assess the situation.
- 2. Escape the belay to baseline.
- 3. Rappel to the injured climber.
- 4. Provide first aid.
- 5. Ascend the rope back to the anchor.
- 6. Lower a climber passing a knot.
- 7. Return to baseline.
- 8. Conduct a complex hauling system.
- 9. Return to baseline.
- 10. Conduct a counterbalanced rappel.
- 11. Conduct a tandem rappel.
- 12. Adapt the application of the systems as required.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MWI-CLMB-2503

MW-ENVR-2003

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-CLEQ-2001

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-743-6 Rock Climbing: Mastering Basic Skills
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MISCELLANEOUS:

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Students must be Rock 2 graduates.

MWI-MOVE-2501: Lead an intermediate ski movement

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>DESCRIPTION</u>: An intermediate ski movement is a 2-day movement, over class II and III terrain, over varying snow conditions, on slopes up to 25 degrees.

BILLETS: Winter Mountain Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given a ski-borne team with combat loads, avalanche transceivers, probes and shovels, on snow-covered mountainous terrain with a slope angle up to 25 degrees.

STANDARD: Maintaining an average ascent rate of 1,000 ft of elevation gain per hour, controlling movement skills, and managing the safety of the team.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Interpret an avalanche bulletin.
- 2. Collect pertinent environmental observations.
- 3. Develop a route plan.
- 4. Conduct a pre-trip avalanche hazard assessment.
- 5. Develop control measures.
- 6. Conduct a pre-trip mountain leader meeting.
- 7. Conduct field observations.
- 8. Assess avalanche danger.
- 9. Conduct terrain selection.
- 10. Conduct travel techniques.
- 11. Conduct a post-trip mountain leader meeting.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2003

MW-ENVR-2002

REFERENCES:

- The American Institute for Avalanche Research and Education Level 1 Student Manual
- 2. 0-89886-364-3 The Avalanche Handbook
- 3. 1-59485-038-7 Backcountry Skiing: Skills for Ski Touring and Ski Mountaineering
- 4. MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

ROOMS/BUILDINGS: A classroom with computer aided graphics is preferred.

MISCELLANEOUS:

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Students must be Winter Mountain Leader Course (M7B), AIARE Level 1 graduates, and Basic Ski Instructors (BSI).

MWI-MOVE-2502: Lead an advanced ski movement

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

<u>DESCRIPTION</u>: An advanced ski movement is a4-7-day movement, over class II - IV terrain, over varying snow conditions, on slopes up to 35 degrees.

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given references, a ski-borne team with combat loads, avalanche transceivers, probes and shovels, on snow-covered mountainous terrain with slopes angles of decent from 25 to 35 degrees.

STANDARD: Maintaining an average ascent rate of 1,000 ft of elevation per hour, controlling movement skills, and managing the safety of the team.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Interpret an avalanche bulletin.
- 2. Collect pertinent environmental observations.
- 3. Develop a route plan.
- 4. Conduct a pre-trip avalanche hazard assessment.
- 5. Develop control measures.
- 6. Conduct a pre-trip mountain leader meeting.
- 7. Conduct field observations.
- 8. Assess snow stability.
- 9. Conduct terrain selection.
- 10. Conduct travel techniques.
- 11. Conduct a post-trip mountain leader meeting.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2003 MW-ENVR-2002

RELATED EVENTS: MWI-MOVE-2501

REFERENCES:

- 1. The American Institute for Avalanche Research and Education Level 2 Student Manual
- 2. 0-89886-364-3 The Avalanche Handbook
- 3. 1-59485-038-7 Backcountry Skiing: Skills for Ski Touring and Ski Mountaineering
- 4. MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

ROOMS/BUILDINGS: A classroom with computer aided graphics is preferred.

MISCELLANEOUS:

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Students must be Snow 2 and AIARE Level 2 graduates, and Military Ski Instructors (MSI).

MWI-MOVE-2503: Lead an alpine grade II, AI/WI1 level climb

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

BILLETS: Summer Mountain Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given references, a climbing rope, military climbing equipment, 2-3 inexperienced climbing partners with assault loads, and in glaciated, high altitude terrain rated PD IFAS.

STANDARD: Maintaining an average ascent rate of 1,000 ft of elevation gain per hour, controlling movement skills, managing distance between party members, employing protection, managing all transitions, and managing the safety of the team.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Collect pertinent environmental observations.
- 2. Develop a route plan.
- 3. Conduct a pre-trip alpine hazard assessment.
- 4. Develop control measures.
- 5. Conduct a pre-trip mountain leader meeting.
- 6. Set up the rope for alpine climbing with a 3-4 person team.
- 7. Conduct a safety check.
- 8. Select appropriate route.
- 9. Assess hazards.
- 10. Conduct a post-trip mountain leader meeting.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MISCELLANEOUS:

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Students must be Summer Mountain Leader Course (M7A) graduates.

MWI-MOVE-2504: Lead an alpine grade III, AI/WI/M2 level climb

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given references, a climbing rope, military climbing equipment, an inexperienced climbing partner with an assault load, and in glaciated, high altitude terrain rated AD IFAS.

STANDARD: Maintaining an average ascent rate of 1,000 ft of elevation gain per hour, controlling movement skills, managing distance between party members, employing protection, managing all transitions, increasing ascent rate to 1,500 ft of elevation gain per hour for extended periods of time, and managing the safety of the team.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Collect pertinent environmental observations.
- 2. Develop a route plan.
- 3. Conduct a pre-trip alpine hazard assessment.
- 4. Develop control measures.
- 5. Conduct a pre-trip mountain leader meeting.
- 6. Set up the rope for alpine climbing with a 2-person team.
- 7. Conduct a safety check.
- 8. Select appropriate route.
- 9. Assess hazards.
- 10. Conduct a post-trip mountain leader meeting.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: MWI-MOVE-2503

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

MW-CLEQ-2001

MWI-MOVE-2503

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MISCELLANEOUS:

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Students must be Alpine 2 graduates.

MWI-MOVE-2505: Conduct basic crevasse rescue

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

DESCRIPTION: A basic crevasse rescue is on snow, without significant surface or edge obstacles/projections, and a conscious, unhurt partner.

BILLETS: Summer Mountain Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given references, a climbing rope, military climbing equipment, an inexperienced climbing partner with an assault load, and an injured climbing partner in a crevasse; and in glaciated high altitude terrain with a suitable crevasse.

<u>STANDARD</u>: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Chapter 3000 Movement and Maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Arrest the fall.
- 2. Build an anchor.
- 3. Transfer the load to the anchor.
- 4. Assess the situation.
- 5. Build the hauling system.
- 6. Haul the climber out of the crevasse.
- 7. Adapt the application of the system as required.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001

MW-ENVR-2003

MW-ENVR-2002

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
- 2. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MISCELLANEOUS:

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Students must be Summer Mountain Leader Course (M7A) graduates.

MWI-MOVE-2506: Conduct advanced crevasse rescue

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

DESCRIPTION: An advanced crevasse rescue is on ice, with significant surface or edge obstacles/projections, and an unconscious, hurt partner.

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

<u>CONDITION</u>: Given references, a climbing rope, military climbing equipment, and an injured climbing partner in a crevasse; and in glaciated high altitude terrain with a suitable crevasse.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations Chapter 3000 Movement and Maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Arrest the fall.
- 2. Build an anchor.
- 3. Transfer the load to the anchor.
- 4. Assess the situation.
- 5. Descend into the crevasse.
- 6. Assess the injured climber.
- 7. Ascend back to the anchor.
- 8. Build the hauling system.

- 9. Haul the climber out of the crevasse.
- 10. Adapt the application of the system as required.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: MWI-MOVE-2505

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MWI-MOVE-2505

MW-ENVR-2003

MW-ENVR-2002

MW-CLEQ-2001

REFERENCES:

- 1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
- 2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
- 3. MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MISCELLANEOUS:

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Students must be Alpine 2 graduates.

MWI-MOVE-2507: Perform Basic Ski Instructor (BSI) techniques

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given references and ski equipment in snow-covered mountainous terrain.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations Chapter 5 Ski Techniques.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Ski any beginner (green) groomed and un-groomed terrain.
- 2. Ski any intermediate (blue) groomed terrain.
- 3. Maintain a balanced stance through a series of turns.
- 4. Control speed through turn shape.
- 5. Maintain rhythm and speed control while linking a series of turns.
- 6. Demonstrate an appropriate blend of skills.
- 7. Demonstrate consistent balance and coordination while skiing cross-country maneuvers.
- 8. Demonstrate correct timing while skiing cross-country maneuvers.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MW-CLEQ-2001 MW-ENVR-2002 MW-MOVE-2011

MW-ENVR-2003

- 1. 1-882409-21-3 Core Concepts: For Snowsports Instructors
- 1-882409-22-1 Alpine Technical Manual: Skiing and Teaching Skills
 1-882409-26-4 Nordic Technical Manual: Skiing and Teaching Skills
- 4. MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Training area must be snow-covered, groomed, track-set, and contain slopes between 5-35 degrees.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Students must be Winter Mountain Leader Course (M7B) graduates.

MWI-MOVE-2508: Perform Military Ski Instructor (MSI) techniques

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given references and ski equipment in snow-covered mountainous terrain.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations Chapter 5 Ski Techniques.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

- 1. Ski any intermediate (blue) groomed and un-groomed terrain.
- 2. Ski any advanced (black) groomed terrain.
- 3. Maintain a balanced stance through a series of turns.
- 4. Use ski design and skill blending to help shape turns.
- 5. Ski a variety of turn sizes within a series of turns while maintaining speed control.
- 6. Link turns of consistent size and rhythm while maintaining speed control.
- 7. Adjust skill blending to changing conditions.
- 8. Demonstrate appropriate weight transfer and one ski balance while skiing cross-country maneuvers.
- 9. Demonstrate correct timing and efficiency of movement while skiing crosscountry maneuvers.
- 10. Demonstrate smooth transitioning between cross-country maneuvers.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

MWI-MOVE-2507 MW-ENVR-2002

MW-ENVR-2003

MW-CLEO-2001

REFERENCES:

- 1. 1-882409-21-3 Core Concepts: For Snowsports Instructors
- 1-882409-22-1 Alpine Technical Manual: Skiing and Teaching Skills
 1-882409-26-4 Nordic Technical Manual: Skiing and Teaching Skills
 MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Training area must be snow covered, groomed, track-set, and contain slopes between 5-35 degrees.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Students must be Basic Ski Instructor (BSI) graduates.

APPENDIX A

ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

AA
AAV
AC
ACE Aviation Combat Element
ACM
AFM
AGM
AIARE American Institute for Avalanche Research and Education
ALOC Admin & Logistics Operations Center
AMC
AMGA American Mountain Guides Association
ANPK
ANPR
AO
AOR
APASSNGG Apply the principles of the acronym
ARTY
ASR
ATO Air Tasking Order
ATV
AVAL
BDA
BFT
Bn
BUST
C2
C4I Command, Control, Communications, Computers, & Intelligence
CAST Combined Arms Staff Trainer
CASEVAC
CBRN Chemical, Biological, Radiological, and Nuclear
CBT
CDE
CDS Containerized Delivery System
CEB
CEOI Communication-Electronics Operations Instructions
CEXC Combined Explosive Exploitation Cell
C-IED Counter Improvised Explosive Devise
CITP
CJCSI Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff Instruction
CJCSM Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff Manual
CLEQ
CLMB
CMO
CNO
CO
CO

COLD .									F	(eep	Cle	ean.	. 7	vo	iđ	Ov	erhea	atino	r. L	oose	and	Lave	ered,	Drv
COMM .								·		_												_	nicati	_
COP .																							l Pict	
CP																				_			nand P	
CPX .																							Exerc	
CREW .			Ċ																				. Warf	
CSS																							Supp	
CWS .	·																						Survi	
D3A .													-										nd Ass	
DAS .																							Supp	
DIA .																							ce Age	
DOD .																							Defe	
DODI .																							struct	
DODIC								·															cion C	
DZ			-			-		i	_														Orop Z	
EA	·																						ic Att	
EAP .	į																						cion P	
ECM .	•																				_	_	Measu	
EFST .	•																						ort Ta	
ENG .	•																						Engin	
ENVR .	•																						rironm	
EOD .	•																						Dispo	
EP	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•			EAP.	TOST	ט טע. מבוע	tron	ic Di	rotect	ion
ES	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	• •		• •	•	E TCC	lect:	ronic	Supp	ort
EW	•																						o Warf	
EWO .	•	•		:																			e Offi	
EWCC .	•	•	•	-	-	_	_																cion C	
FAC .	•	•	•																				ontrol	
FARP .	•	٠																					ing Po	
FDP&E	•	•	•	•	•	•	٠	•	•														Execut	
Fist .	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•								· ·						ort T	
FM .	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•														ld Man	
FMF	•	•	•	•	•	•	•																ine Fo	
FMFM .	•	٠	•																				ce Man	
FMFRP	•	•	•					-	-				-	_	-								olicat	
FOB .	•	•	•																				ting E	
FP	٠	٠	•	•	٠	•													. г		-	_	rotect	
FPCON	•	•	•	•	•	•	٠	•	٠														Condit	
FPF .	٠	•	•	•	٠	•	•	•	•		•	•	•										tive F	
	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	٠	٠		•	• •	•	• ,	•									
FPL .	٠	٠	•	•	٠	•	•	•	•	• •	•		•	٠	•	• •							tive I	
FRAGO	•	٠	٠	٠	٠	•	٠	•	٠														ary Or	
FRRS .	٠																	_	_				rd Sys	
· •	•	•	٠	•	•	•	•																Supp	
FSCC .	•	•	•	٠	٠	•	٠																on Cen	
FSCM .	٠	•	•	•	٠	•	•	٠	٠														Measu	
GCE .	٠	٠	•	•	•	•	•	٠	•														t Elem	
GPS .	•	•	•	٠	•	•	٠	٠	٠														ng Sys	
HEALT	•	•	٠	•	•	•	٠	•	•														ing Ta	
HF	٠	•	٠	•	•	•	٠	٠	٠														Freque	
HLZ .	•	٠	•	•	•	•	•																ding Z	
HPT .	•	٠	٠	٠	•	•	٠	•															ff Tar	
HPTL .	-	•	. •	•	•	•	•	٠	•														rget I	
HQ	٠	٠	٠	•	•	•	٠	٠	•				• .	•	•_	• •				_ • •		Head	dquart	ers
HRST .	•	٠	•	•	•	•	•	٠															echniq	
HST .	•	٠	•	•	٠	•	•	٠	٠	• •	•	•	•	•	•				He	Tico	pter	Supp	ort T	eam

vvvm
HVT
HWSAT Helicopter Wave Serial Assignment Table
IAW
IED Improvised Explosion Device
INT
IO
IPB Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield
IPOE Intelligence Preparation of the Operating Environment
ISO
ISOPREP
ITG Initial Terminal Guidance
J-FIRE Joint Application of Firepower
JCS
JIPTL Joint Integrated Prioritized Target List
JP Joint Publication
JTTP Joint Tactics Technique Procedures
LAR Light Armored Reconnaissance
LD Line of Departure
LOGPAC Logistics Package
LZ
MACK
MAGTF
MCDP
MCEB Military Communications-Electronics Board
MCLL Marine Corps Lesson Learn
MCO
MCOO
MCPP Marine Corps Planning Process
MCRC
MCRP Marine Corps Reference Publication
MCWIK Marine Cold Weather Infantry Kit
MCWL
MCWP Marine Corps War fighting Publication
MET
METT-TSL Mission, Enemy, Terrain and Weather, Troops and Fire
Support Available, Time Available, Space, Logistics
MILES Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System
MOE Measures of Effectiveness
MOUT Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
MOVE
MPF
MPMG
MPTR Multipurpose Training Range
MSI Military Ski Instructor
MSR
MTV
MUX
MW Mountain Warfare
MWD
MWO
MWI
NAVMC Navy and Marine Corps Publication NBC
NBC

· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
NSFS
NWTC Northern Warfare Training Center
OEF Operation Enduring Freedom
OP
OPSEC
ORM Operational Risk Management
ORSAT Operations Research Systems Analyst Team
OTI T&R Operations and Tactics Instructor Training and Readiness
PAM
PDF
PETN Pentaerythrite Tetranitrate
PLD Personnel Lowering Device
POI
POL Petroleum Oil and Lubricant
POO
PMCS Preventive Maintenance Checks and Service
PPE Personal Protective Equipment
PSYOPS
PZ
RAM
RAS
ROE
RPA
RTX
R/W
SAR
SATCOM
SEAD
SERE Survival, Evasion, Resistance, and Escape
SHELREP
SIO
SITREP
SOP
SPEED Systems, Planning, Engineering, and Evaluation device
SPIE Special Purpose Insertion/Extraction
SPMAGTF CE Special Marine Air-Ground Task Force Command Element
SCOUL SKIPY
SS
SSE
SSE Sensitive Site Exploitation SUST Sustainment T&E Test and Evaluation T/E Table/Equipment T/O Table/Organization TACP Tactical Air Control Party TAGS Theater Air Ground System
SSE Sensitive Site Exploitation SUST Sustainment TWE Test and Evaluation T/E Table/Equipment T/O Table/Organization TACP Tactical Air Control Party TAGS Theater Air Ground System TM Training Manuel
SSE Sensitive Site Exploitation SUST Sustainment T&E Test and Evaluation T/E Table/Equipment T/O Table/Organization TACP Tactical Air Control Party TAGS Theater Air Ground System TM Training Manuel TPED Tasking, Processing, Exploitation, and Dissemination
SSE Sensitive Site Exploitation SUST Sustainment T&E Sustainment T/E Test and Evaluation T/E Table/Equipment T/O Table/Organization TACP Tactical Air Control Party TAGS Theater Air Ground System TM Training Manuel TPED Tasking, Processing, Exploitation, and Dissemination TPFDD Time-phased Force and Deployment Data
SSE Sensitive Site Exploitation SUST Sustainment T&E Sustainment T/E Test and Evaluation T/E Table/Equipment T/O Table/Organization TACP Tactical Air Control Party TAGS Theater Air Ground System TM Training Manuel TPED Tasking, Processing, Exploitation, and Dissemination TPFDD Time-phased Force and Deployment Data TRAP Tactical Recovery of Aircraft and Personnel
SSE Sensitive Site Exploitation SUST Sustainment T&E Test and Evaluation T/E Table/Equipment T/O Table/Organization TACP Tactical Air Control Party TAGS Theater Air Ground System TM Training Manuel TPED Tasking, Processing, Exploitation, and Dissemination TPFDD Time-phased Force and Deployment Data TRAP Tactical Recovery of Aircraft and Personnel TRP Target Reference Points
SSE Sensitive Site Exploitation SUST Sustainment T&E Test and Evaluation T/E Table/Equipment T/O Table/Organization TACP Tactical Air Control Party TAGS Theater Air Ground System TM Training Manuel TPED Tasking, Processing, Exploitation, and Dissemination TPFDD Time-phased Force and Deployment Data TRAP Tactical Recovery of Aircraft and Personnel TRP Target Reference Points TRST Tactical Rope Suspension Techniques
SSE Sensitive Site Exploitation SUST Sustainment T&E Test and Evaluation T/E Table/Equipment T/O Table/Organization TACP Tactical Air Control Party TAGS Theater Air Ground System TM Training Manuel TPED Tasking, Processing, Exploitation, and Dissemination TPFDD Time-phased Force and Deployment Data TRAP Tactical Recovery of Aircraft and Personnel TRP Target Reference Points TRST Tactical Rope Suspension Techniques TST Targets
SSE Sensitive Site Exploitation SUST Sustainment T&E Test and Evaluation T/E Table/Equipment T/O Table/Organization TACP Tactical Air Control Party TAGS Theater Air Ground System TM Training Manuel TPED Tasking, Processing, Exploitation, and Dissemination TPFDD Time-phased Force and Deployment Data TRAP Tactical Recovery of Aircraft and Personnel TRP Tactical Rope Suspension Techniques TST Tactic Techniques Procedure
SSE Sensitive Site Exploitation SUST Sustainment T&E Test and Evaluation T/E Table/Equipment T/O Table/Organization TACP Tactical Air Control Party TAGS Theater Air Ground System TM Training Manuel TPED Tasking, Processing, Exploitation, and Dissemination TPFDD Time-phased Force and Deployment Data TRAP Tactical Recovery of Aircraft and Personnel TRP Target Reference Points TRST Tactical Rope Suspension Techniques TST Targets

UC	٠				-							Urban Assault Climber
UHF .			÷									Ultra High Frequency
UMCC .												Unit Movement Control Center
UNAAF												Unified Action Armed Forces
VHF .												Very High Frequency
WIT .												. Weapons Intelligence Teams

APPENDIX B

TERMS AND DEFINITIONS

Terms in this glossary are subject to change as applicable orders and directives are revised. Terms established by Marine Corps orders or directives take precedence after definitions found in Joint Pub 1-02, DOD Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms.

Α

After Action Review. A professional discussion of training events conducted after all training to promote learning among training participants. The formality and scope increase with the command level and size of the training evolution. For longer exercises, they should be planned for at predetermined times during an exercise. The results of the AAR shall be recorded on an after action report and forwarded to higher headquarters. The commander and higher headquarters use the results of an AAR to reallocate resources, reprioritize their training plan, and plan for future training.

Assessment. An assessment is an informal judgment of the unit's proficiency and resources made by a commander or trainer to gain insight into the unit's overall condition. It serves as the basis for the midrange plan. Commanders make frequent use of these determinations during the course of the combat readiness cycle in order to adjust, prioritize or modify training events and plans.

C

Chaining. Chaining is a process that enables unit leaders to effectively identify subordinate collective events and individual events that support a specific collective event. For example, collective training events at the 4000-level are directly supported by collective events at the 3000-level. Utilizing the building block approach to progressive training, these collective events are further supported by individual training events at the 1000 and 2000-levels. When a higher-level event by its nature requires the completion of lower level events, they are "chained"; Sustainment credit is given for all lower level events chained to a higher event.

Collective Event. A collective event is a clearly defined, discrete, and measurable activity, action, or event (i.e., task) that requires organized team or unit performance and leads to accomplishment of a mission or function. A collective task is derived from unit missions or higher-level collective tasks. Task accomplishment requires performance of procedures composed of supporting collective or individual tasks. A collective task describes the exact performance a group must perform in the field under actual operational conditions. The term "collective" does not necessarily infer that a unit accomplishes the event. A unit, such as a squad or platoon conducting an attack; may accomplish a collective event or, it may be accomplished by an individual to accomplish a unit mission, such as a battalion supply officer completing a reconciliation of the battalion's CMR.

Thus, many collective events will have titles that are the same as individual events; however, the standard and condition will be different because the scope of the collective event is broader.

Collective Training Standards (CTS). Criteria that specify mission and functional area unit proficiency standards for combat, combat support, and combat service support units. They include tasks, conditions, standards, evaluator instruction, and key indicators. CTS are found within collective training events in T&R Manuals.

Combat Readiness Cycle. The combat readiness cycle depicts the relationships within the building block approach to training. The combat readiness cycle progresses from T&R Manual individual core skills training, to the accomplishment of collective training events, and finally, to a unit's participation in a contingency or actual combat. The combat readiness cycle demonstrates the relationship of core capabilities to unit combat readiness. Individual core skills training and the training of collective events lead to proficiency and the ability to accomplish the unit's stated mission.

Combat Readiness Percentage (CRP). The CRP is a quantitative numerical value used in calculating collective training readiness based on the E-coded events that support the unit METL. CRP is a concise measure of unit training accomplishments. This numerical value is only a snapshot of training readiness at a specific time. As training is conducted, unit CRP will continuously change.

Component Events. Component events are the major tasks involved in accomplishing a collective event. Listing these tasks guide Marines toward the accomplishment of the event and help evaluators determine if the task has been done to standard. These events may be lower-level collective or individual events that must be accomplished.

Condition. The condition describes the training situation or environment under which the training event or task will take place. Expands on the information in the title by identifying when, where, and why the event or task will occur and what materials, personnel, equipment, environmental provisions, and safety constraints must be present to perform the event or task in a real-world environment. Commanders can modify the conditions of the event to best prepare their Marines to accomplish the assigned mission (e.g. in a desert environment; in a mountain environment; etc.).

Core Competency. Core competency is the comprehensive measure of a unit's ability to accomplish its assigned MET. It serves as the foundation of the T&R Program. Core competencies are those unit core capabilities and individual core skills that support the commander's METL and T/O mission statement. Individual competency is exhibited through demonstration of proficiency in specified core tasks and core plus tasks. Unit proficiency is measured through collective tasks.

Core Capabilities. Core capabilities are the essential functions a unit must be capable of performing during extended contingency/combat operations. Core unit capabilities are based upon mission essential tasks derived from operational plans; doctrine and established tactics; techniques and procedures.

Core Plus Capabilities. Core plus capabilities are advanced capabilities that are environment, mission, or theater specific. Core plus capabilities may entail high-risk, high-cost training for missions that are less likely to be assigned in combat.

Core Plus Skills. Core plus skills are those advanced skills that are environment, mission, rank, or billet specific. 2000-level training is designed to make Marines proficient in core skills in a specific billet or at a specified rank at the Combat Ready level. 3000-8000-level training produces combat leaders and fully qualified section members at the Combat Qualified level. Marines trained at the Combat Qualified level are those the commanding officer feels are capable of accomplishing unit-level missions and of directing the actions of subordinates. Many core plus tasks are learned via MOJT, while others form the base for curriculum in career level MOS courses taught by the formal school.

Core Skills. Core skills are those essential basic skills that "make" a Marine and qualify that Marine for an MOS. They are the 1000-level skills introduced in entry-level training at formal schools.

D

Defense Readiness Reporting System (DRRS). A comprehensive readiness reporting system that evaluates readiness on the basis of the actual missions and capabilities assigned to the forces. It is a capabilities-based, adaptive, near real-time reporting system for the entire Department of Defense.

Deferred Event. A T&R event that a commanding officer may postpone when in his or her judgment, a lack of logistic support, ammo, ranges, or other training assets requires a temporary exemption. CRP cannot be accrued for deferred "E-coded" events.

Delinquent Event. An event becomes delinquent when a Marine or unit exceeds the sustainment interval for that particular event. The individual or unit must update the delinquent event by first performing all prerequisite events. When the unit commander deems that performing all prerequisite is unattainable, then the delinquent event will be re-demonstrated under the supervision of the appropriate evaluation authority.

E

E-coded Event. An "E-coded" event is a collective T&R event that is a noted indicator of capability or, a noted Collective skill that contributes to the unit's ability to perform the supported MET. As such, only "E-coded" events are assigned a CRP value and used to calculate a unit's CRP.

Entry-level training. Pipeline training that equips students for service with the Marine Operating Forces.

Evaluation. Evaluation is a continuous process that occurs at all echelons, during every phase of training and can be both formal and informal. Evaluations ensure that Marines and units are capable of conducting their combat mission. Evaluation results are used to reallocate resources, reprioritize the training plan, and plan for future training.

Event (Training). (1) An event is a significant training occurrence that is identified, expanded and used as a building block and potential milestone for a unit's training. An event may include formal evaluations. (2) An event within the T&R Program can be an individual training evolution, a collective training evolution or both. Through T&R events, the unit commander ensures that individual Marines and the unit progress from a combat capable status to a Fully Combat Qualified (FCQ) status.

Event Component. Event components are the major procedures (i.e., actions) that must occur to perform a Collective Event to standard.

Exercise Commander (EC). The Commanding General, Marine Expeditionary Force or his appointee will fill this role, unless authority is delegated to the respective commander of the Division, Wing, or FSSG. Responsibilities and functions of the EC include: (1) designate unit(s) to be evaluated, (2) may designate an exercise director, (3) prescribe exercise objectives and T&R events to be evaluated, (4) coordinate with commands or agencies external to the Marine Corps and adjacent Marine Corps commands, when required.

Exercise Director (ED). Designated by the EC to prepare, conduct, and report all evaluation results. Responsibilities and functions of the ED include: (1) Publish a letter of instruction (LOI) that: delineates the T&R events to be evaluated, establishes timeframe of the exercise, lists responsibilities of various elements participating in the exercise, establishes safety requirements/guidelines, and lists coordinating instructions. (2) Designate the TEC and TECG to operate as the central control agency for the exercise. (3) Assign evaluators, to include the senior evaluator, and ensure that those evaluators are properly trained. (4) Develop the general exercise scenario taking into account any objectives/ events prescribed by the EC. (5) Arrange for all resources to include: training areas, airspace, aggressor forces, and other required support.

I

Individual Readiness. The individual training readiness of each Marine is measured by the number of individual events required and completed for the rank or billet currently held.

Individual Training. Training that applies to individual Marines. Examples include rifle qualifications and HMMWV driver licensing.

Individual Training Standards (ITS). Individual Training Standards specify training tasks and standards for each MOS or specialty within the Marine Corps. In most cases, once an MOS or community develops a T&R, the ITS order will be cancelled. However, most communities will probably fold a large portion of their ITS into their new T&R manual.

М

Marine Corps Ground Training and Readiness (T&R) Program. The T&R Program is the Marine Corps' primary tool for planning and conducting training, for planning and conducting training evaluation, and for assessing training readiness. The program will provide the commander with standardized programs of instruction for units within the ground combat, combat support, and combat service support communities. It consolidates the ITS, CTS, METL and other

individual and unit training management tools. T&R is a program of standards that systematizes commonly accepted skills, is open to innovative change, and above all, tailors the training effort to the unit's mission. Further, T&R serves as a training guide and provides commanders an immediate assessment of unit combat readiness by assigning a CRP to key training events. In short, the T&R Program is a building block approach to training that maximizes flexibility and produces the best-trained Marines possible.

Mission Essential Task(s) MET(s). A MET is a collective task in which an organization must be proficient in order to accomplish an appropriate portion of its wartime mission(s). MET listings are the foundation for the T&R manual; all events in the T&R manual support a MET.

Mission Essential Task List (METL). Descriptive training document that provides units a clear, war fighting focused description of collective actions necessary to achieve wartime mission proficiency. The service-level METL, that which is used as the foundation of the T&R manual, is developed using Marine Corps doctrine, Operational Plans, T/Os, UJTL, UNTL, and MCTL. For community based T&R Manuals, an occupational field METL is developed to focus the community's collective training standards. Commanders develop their unit METL from the service-level METL, operational plans, contingency plans, and SOPs.

0

Operational Readiness (DOD, NATO). OR is the capability of a unit/formation, ship, weapon system, or equipment to perform the missions or functions for which it is organized or designed. May be used in a general sense or to express a level or degree of readiness.

P

Performance step. Performance steps are included in the components of an Individual T&R Event. They are the major procedures (i.e., actions) a unit Marine must accomplish to perform an individual event to standard. They describe the procedure the task performer must take to perform the task under operational conditions and provide sufficient information for a task performer to perform the procedure (May necessitate identification of supporting steps, procedures, or actions in outline form.). Performance steps follow a logical progression and should be followed sequentially, unless otherwise stated. Normally, performance steps are listed only for 1000-level individual events (those that are taught in the entry-level MOS school).

Prerequisite Event. Prerequisites are the academic training and/or T&R events that must be completed prior to attempting the event.

R

Readiness (DOD). Readiness is the ability of US military forces to fight and meet the demands of the national military strategy. Readiness is the synthesis of two distinct but interrelated levels: (a) Unit readiness--The ability to provide capabilities required by combatant commanders to execute assigned missions. This is derived from the ability of each unit to deliver the outputs for which it was designed. (b) Joint readiness--The combatant

commander's ability to integrate and synchronize ready combat and support forces to execute assigned missions.

S

Section Skill Tasks. Section Skills are those competencies directly related to unit functioning. They are group rather than individual in nature, and require participation by a section (S-1, S-2, S-3, etc).

Simulation Training. Simulators provide the additional capability to develop and hone core and core plus skills. Accordingly, the development of simulator training events for appropriate T&R syllabi can help maintain valuable combat resources while reducing training time and cost. Therefore, in cases where simulator fidelity and capabilities are such that simulator training closely matches that of actual training events, T&R Manual developers may include the option of using simulators to accomplish the training. CRP credit will be earned for E-coded simulator events based on assessment of relative training event performance.

Standard. A standard is a statement that establishes criteria for how well a task or learning objective must be performed. The standard specifies how well, completely, or accurately a process must be performed or product produced. For higher-level collective events, it describes why the event is being done and the desired end-state of the event. Standards become more specific for lower-level events and outline the accuracy, time limits, sequencing, quality, product, process, restrictions, etc., that indicate the minimum acceptable level of performance required of the event. At a minimum, both collective and individual training standards consist of a task, the condition under which the task is to be performed, and the evaluation criteria that will be used to verify that the task has been performed to a satisfactory level.

Sustainment Training. Periodic retraining or demonstration of an event required maintaining the minimum acceptable level of proficiency or capability required to accomplish a training objective. Sustainment training goes beyond the entry-level and is designed to maintain or further develop proficiency in a given set of skills.

Systems Approach to Training (SAT). An orderly process for analyzing, designing, developing, implementing, and evaluating a unit's training program to ensure the unit, and the Marines of that unit acquire the knowledge and skills essential for the successful conduct of the unit's wartime missions.

T

Training Task. This describes a direct training activity that pertains to an individual Marine. A task is composed of 3 major components: a description of what is to be done, a condition, and a standard.

Technical Exercise Controller (TEC). The TEC is appointed by the ED, and usually comes from his staff or a subordinate command. The TEC is the senior evaluator within the TECG and should be of equal or higher grade than the commander(s) of the unit(s) being evaluated. The TEC is responsible for ensuring that the evaluation is conducted following the instructions

contained in this order and MCO 1553.3B. Specific T&R Manuals are used as the source for evaluation criteria.

Tactical Exercise Control Group (TECG). A TECG is formed to provide subject matter experts in the functional areas being evaluated. The benefit of establishing a permanent TECG is to have resident, dedicated evaluation authority experience, and knowledgeable in evaluation technique. The responsibilities and functions of the TECG include: (1) developing a detailed exercise scenario to include the objectives and events prescribed by the EC/ED in the exercise LOI; (2) conducting detailed evaluator training prior to the exercise; (3) coordinating and controlling role players and aggressors; (4) compiling the evaluation data submitted by the evaluators and submitting required results to the ED; (5) preparing and conducting a detailed exercise debrief for the evaluated unit(s).

Training Plan. The training plan is a training document that outlines the general plan for the conduct of individual and collective training in an organization for specified periods of time.

U

Unit CRP. Unit CRP is a percentage of the E-coded collective events that support the unit METL accomplished by the unit. Unit CRP is the average of all MET CRP.

Unit Evaluation. All units in the Marine Corps must be evaluated, either formally or informally, to ensure they are capable of conducting their combat mission. Informal evaluations should take place during all training events. The timing of formal evaluations is critical and should, when appropriate, be directly related to the units' operational deployment cycle. Formal evaluations should take place after the unit has been staffed with the majority of its personnel, has had sufficient time to train to individual and collective standards, and early enough in the training cycle so there is sufficient time to correctly identified weaknesses prior to deployment. All combat units, and units task organized for combat require formal evaluations prior to operational deployments.

Unit Training Management (UTM). Unit training management is the use of the SAT and Marine Corps training principles in a manner that maximizes training results and focuses the training priorities of the unit on its wartime mission. UTM governs the major peacetime training activity of the Marine Corps and applies to all echelons of the Total Force.

W

Waived Event. An event that is waived by a commanding officer when in his or her judgment, previous experience or related performance satisfies the requirement of a particular event.

APPENDIX C

REFERENCES

Army Field Manuals (FM)

FM 21-76 Survival

FM 3-05.213 Special Forces Use of Pack Animals

FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering

FM 5-102 Countermobility

FM 5-103 Field Fortifications

FM 5-170 Engineer Reconnaissance

FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions

Fleet Marine Field Manuals (FMFM)

FMFM 13 MAGTF Engineer Operations

FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon

Fleet Marine Force Reference Publications (FMFRP)

FMFRP 3-29 U.S. Navy Oceanographic and Meteorological Support System Manual

Joint Publications (JPs)

JP 3-50.1 National SAR Manual Volume II

JP 3-50.3 Evasion and Recovery 1996

Marine Corps Orders

MCO 3500.42 Marine Corps HRST Policy and Program Administration

Marine Corps Warfighting Publications (MCWP)

MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling for Infantry Units

MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations

MCWP 3-35.1 Mountain Warfare Operations

Marine Corps Reference Publications (MCRP)

MCRP 3-02H Survival, Evasion, and Recovery

MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

MCRP 3-17A/FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data

MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports

MCRP 3-17.7J Rigging Techniques, Procedures, and Applications

MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

MCRP 3-35.1B Mountain Leader's Guide to Winter Operations

MCRP 3-35.1C Mountain Leaders Guide to Mountain Warfare Operations

MCRP 3-35.1D Cold Region Operations

Marine Corps Warfighting Laboratory (MCWL) X-Files

MCWL X-FILE 3-35.11 Small Unit Support Vehicle (SUSV)

MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

MCWL X-FILE 3-35.22 Water Procurement

MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual

Technical Manuals

SL-3-10161A Marine Corps Stocklist, Marine Assault Climbers Kit MACK

Miscellaneous

The American Institute for Avalanche Research and Education

The American Institute for Avalanche Research and Education Level 1 Student

The American Institute for Avalanche Research and Education Level 2 Student Manual

Elements of Farrier Science

The Essential Wilderness Navigator. David Seidmond; 1995

Marine Assault Climbers Kit Care and Maintenance Manual

SAS Survival Guide; John Wiesman, 1993

Wilderness Medicine, 4th Edition, Wm. Forgey M.D., ICS Books Inc., Merrillville, IN 1994

0011088 Snares and Snaring

006-270139-8 Book of Horses, A Complete Medical Reference Guide for Horses and Foals

0425099660 Tom Brown's Field Guide to Nature Observation and Tracking

0-520-05569-1 Poisonous Plants of California

0801670446 Wilderness Medicine: Management of Wilderness and Environmental Emergencies

0-89886-364-3 The Avalanche Handbook

0-89886-743-6 Rock Climbing: Mastering Basic Skills

0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher

0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills, The Mountaineers 7th Edition 2nd Printing.

0-89886-834-3 Staying Alive in Avalanche Terrain

0-9685856-1-2 Backcountry Avalanche Awareness

1-59485-038-7 Backcountry Skiing: Skills for Ski Touring and Ski Mountaineering

1-882409-21-3 Core Concepts: For Snowsports Instructors

1-882409-22-1 Alpine Technical Manual: Skiing and Teaching Skills

1-882409-26-4 Nordic Technical Manual: Skiing and Teaching Skills

96-90686 Tactical Tracking Operations

AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides

B0006QT1D0 Field Manual of Wilderness Diseases in the Southeastern United States, 2nd edition, 1997

APPENDIX D

CLASS V (W) REQUIRED FOR MWO TRAINING

- 1. This appendix is reserved for future use.
- 2. All ammunition used in mountain warfare and cold weather operations training is the responsibility of the unit receiving training based on annual allocations and is not provided by the Mountain Warfare Training Center. Ammunition requirements listed in T&R events reflect amounts typically utilized in training, but actual ammunition requirements will be based on corresponding events in other T&R Manuals, notably the Infantry (NAVMC 3500.44_), Artillery (NAVMC 3500.7_), and Engineer & Utilities (NAVMC 3500.12_) manuals.

APPENDIX E

GLOSSARY OF SPECIALIZED TERMS

AIARE	American Institute of Avalanche Research and Education
Abseil	The process by which a climber may descend on a fixed rope. Also known as Rappel.
Adze	A thin blade mounted perpendicular to the handle on an ice axe that can be used for chipping.
Alpine start	To make an efficient start on a long climb by packing all your gear the previous evening and starting early in the morning, usually before sunrise.
Altitude	A medical condition that is often observed at high altitudes. Also
sickness	known as Acute mountain sickness or AMS.
Anchor	Any piece of protection put into the rock to arrest a climbers fall. An arrangement of one or (usually) more pieces of gear set up to support the weight of a belay or top rope.
Approach	The path or route to the start of a technical climb. Although this is generally a walk or, at most, a scramble it is occasionally as hazardous as the climb itself.
Arête	The outside corner of rock. See also dihedral.
Ascender	A device for ascending on a rope. One type of mechanical ascender is the Jumar.
ATC	A proprietary type of belay device. (ATC also stands for Air traffic controller.)
Balance	The practice of climbing on vertical to near vertical obstacles without
Climbing	a rope.
Belay	To protect a climber from falling using a rope, friction, and an anchor.
Belay device	A mechanical device used to create friction when belaying by putting bends in the rope. Many types of belay device exist, including ATC, grigri, Reverso, Sticht plate, eight, tuber, and the Munter hitch. Some belay devices may also be used as descenders.
Bergschrund	A crevasse that forms on the upper portion of a glacier where the moving section pulls away from the headwall.
Bivy	A camp, or the act of camping, from "bivouac".
Bolt	An anchor-point permanently drilled into the rock.
Bouldering	The practice of climbing on large boulders. Typically this is close to the ground, so protection takes the form of crash pads and spotting instead of belay ropes. (See Balance Climbing)
Buttress	A prominent feature that juts out from a rock or mountain.
Cam	To affix using counter-pressure.: A spring-loaded device used to place protection. See Spring loaded camming device. Campus board
Carabiner	Metal rings with spring-loaded gates, used as connectors. Also known as crab or biner. (Karabiner)
Chalk	A compound used to improve grip by absorbing sweat. It is actually gymnastics chalk, usually magnesium carbonate.

Chimney	A rock cleft with vertical sides mostly parallel, large enough to fit the climber's body into. To climb such a structure, the climber often
	uses his head, back and feet to apply opposite pressure on the vertical
	walls.
Chock	A mechanical device, or a wedge, used to attach anchors into cracks.
Clean	To remove equipment from a route.
Climbing	
command	A short phrase used for communication between a climber and a belayer.
Col	A small pass between two peaks.
Couloir	A steep gully or gorge frequently filled with snow or ice.
Cornice	An overhanging edge of snow on a ridge.
Crag	A small area with climbing routes, often just a small cliff face or a
a	few boulders.
Crampons	Metal framework with spikes attached to boots to increase safety on snow and ice.
Crux	The most difficult portion of a climb.
Daisy chain	A type of sling with multiple sewn, or tied, loops. In many situations this can be more versatile than a normal sling.
Deadman	A dynamic climbing technique in which the hold is grabbed at the apex of upward motion. This technique places minimal strain on both the hold and the arms.
Deadman anchor	An object buried into snow to serve as an anchor for an attached rope. One common type of such an anchor is the snow fluke.
Deck	The ground. To hit the ground, usually the outcome of a fall.
Descender	A device for controlled descent on a rope. Many belay devices may be used as descenders, including ATCs, eights, or even carabiners.
Dihedral	The inside corner of rock. See also arête.
Dynamic rope	A slightly elastic rope that softens falls to some extent. Also tend to be damaged less severely by heavy loads. Compare with static rope.
Eight	A belay device or descender. Named from its appearance as the digit "8".
Fixed rope	A rope which has a fixed attachment point. Commonly used for abseiling or aid climbing.
Follow	What the second does. (TRST following an Assault Climber)
Friction	Climbing technique relying on the friction between the sloped rock and the sole of the shoe to support the climber's weight, as opposed using holds or edges, cracks, etc.
Friend	A name brand of a type of spring loaded camming device (SLCD), sometimes used to refer to any type of spring loaded camming device.
Gear sling	A gear sling is usually used by climbers when they have too much gear to fit on the gear loops of their harnesses.
Glissade	A usually voluntary act of sliding down a steep slope of snow.
Grade	Intended as an objective measure of the technical difficultly of a particular climb or bouldering problem. More often is highly subjective, however.
GriGri	A belay device designed to be easy to use and safe for beginners because it is self-locking under load. Invented and manufactured by Petzl.
HACE	High Altitude Cerebral Edema - a severe, and often fatal, form of altitude sickness.

Application of a specific climbing technique to progress on a climb. Multi-pitch climbing. Climbing on routes that are too long for a single belay rope Munter hitch A simple hitch that is often used for belaying without a mechanical belay device. Otherwise known as an Italian hitch or a Friction hitch. Névê Permanent granular ice formed by repeated freeze-thaw cycles. No-hand rest. An entirely leg-supported resting position during climbing that does not require hands on the rock Nut A metal wedge attached to a wire loop that is inserted into cracks for protection. See hexcentric.		
Harness See climbing harness. A sewn nylon webbling device worn around the waist and thighs that is designed to allow a person to safely hang suspended in the air. Headwall	HAPE	High Altitude Pulmonary Edema - a serious form of altitude sickness.
Hexcentric A protective device. It is an eccentric hexagonal nut attached to a wire loop. The nut is inserted into a crack and it holds through counter-pressure. Often just termed Hex. HRST Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques and/or Helicopter Rope Suspension Technician HRST Kit Equipment used in Helicopter HRST Operations Ice axe A tool for safety and balance and arresting a fall. Ice screw A term used to protect a climb over steep ice or for setting up a crevasse rescue system. The strongest and most reliable is the modern tubular ice screw which ranges in length from 18 to 23 cm. Jumar A type of mechanical ascender. To ascend a rope using a mechanical ascender. Knots Climbers rely on many different knots for anchoring oneself to a mountain, joining two ropes together, slings for climbing up the rope, etc. Lead A form of climbing in which the climber places anchors and attaches the belay rope as they climb. Leader Fall A fall while Lead climbing. A fall from above the climber's last piece of protection. The falling leader will fall at least twice the distance back to her last piece, plus slack and rope stretch. Locking carabiner with a locking gate, to prevent accidental release of the rope. Mantle A move used to surmount a ledge or feature in the rock in the absence of any useful holds directly above. It involves pushing down on a ledge or feature instead of pulling down. In ice climbing, a mantle is done by moving the hands from the shaft to the top of the ice tool and pushing rope. Climbing ropes use kernmantle construction consisting of a kern (or core) for strength and an external sheath called the mantle MACK Marine Assault Climbers Kit. Contains the equipment necessary for 8 TRSTs and/or Assault Climbers. MCWIK Marine Cold Weather Infantry Kit. Consists of a sled/tent/stove system along with other cold weather team equipment. Move Application of a specific climbing technique to progress on a climb. Multi-pitch climbing. Climbing no rottes that are too long for a single belay rope Munte		See climbing harness. A sewn nylon webbing device worn around the waist and thighs that is designed to allow a person to safely hang
wire loop. The nut is inserted into a crack and it holds through counter-pressure. Often just termed Hex. Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques and/or Helicopter Rope Suspension Technician RRST Kit Equipment used in Helicopter HRST Operations Ice axe A tool for safety and balance and arresting a fall. A screw used to protect a climb over steep ice or for setting up a crevase rescue system. The strongest and most reliable is the modern tubular ice screw which ranges in length from 18 to 23 cm. Jumar A type of mechanical ascender. To ascend a rope using a mechanical ascender. Knots Climbers rely on many different knots for anchoring oneself to a mountain, joining two ropes together, slings for climbing up the rope, etc. Lead A form of climbing in which the climber places anchors and attaches the belay rope as they climb. Leader Fall A fall while Lead climbing. A fall from above the climber's last piece of protection. The falling leader will fall at least twice the distance back to her last piece, plus slack and rope stretch. Locking A carabiner with a locking gate, to prevent accidental release of the rope. Mantle A move used to surmount a ledge or feature in the rock in the absence of any useful holds directly above. It involves pushing down on a ledge or feature instead of pulling down. In ice climbing, a mantle is done by moving the hands from the shaft to the top of the ice tool and pushing down on the head of the tool. The external covering of a climbing rope. Climbing ropes use kernmantle construction consisting of a kern (or core) for strength and an external sheath called the mantle MACK Marine Assault Climbers Kit. Contains the equipment necessary for 8 TRSTs and/or Assault Climbers. MCWIK Marine Cold Weather Infantry Kit. Consists of a sled/tent/stove system along with other cold weather team equipment. Move Application of a specific climbing on routes that are too long for a single belay rope Munter hitch A simple hitch that is often used for belaying without a mechanical belay device. Ot	Headwall	The region of a cliff or rock face that steepens dramatically.
Technician Tec axe A tool for safety and balance and arresting a fall. Ice axe A tool for safety and balance and arresting a fall. Ice screw A screw used to protect a climb over steep ice or for setting up a crevasse rescue system. The strongest and most reliable is the modern tubular ice screw which ranges in length from 18 to 23 cm. Jumax A type of mechanical ascender. To ascend a rope using a mechanical ascender. Climbers rely on many different knots for anchoring oneself to a mountain, joining two ropes together, slings for climbing up the rope, etc. Lead Climbors pea as they climb. Leader Fall A form of climbing in which the climber places anchors and attaches the belay rope as they climb. Locking Carabiner with a locking gate, to prevent accidental release of the rope. A carabiner with a locking gate, to prevent accidental release of the rope. Mantle A move used to surmount a ledge or feature in the rock in the absence of any useful holds directly above. It involves pushing down on a ledge or feature instead of pulling down. In ice climbing, a mantle is done by moving the hands from the shaft to the top of the ice tool and pushing down on the head of the tool. The external covering of a climbing rope. Climbing ropes use kernmantle construction consisting of a kern (or core) for strength and an external sheath called the mantle MACK Marine Assault Climbers Kit. Contains the equipment necessary for 8 TRSTs and/or Assault Climbers. MCWIK Marine Cold Weather Infantry Kit. Consists of a sled/tent/stove system along with other cold weather team equipment. Application of a specific climbing technique to progress on a climb. Multi-pitch climbing. Climbing on routes that are too long for a single belay rope Munter hitch A simple hitch that is often used for belaying without a mechanical belay device. Otherwise known as an Italian hitch or a Friction hitch does not require hands on the rock New A permanent granular ice formed by repeated freeze-thaw cycles. No-hand rest. An entirely leg-s	Hexcentric	A protective device. It is an eccentric hexagonal nut attached to a wire loop. The nut is inserted into a crack and it holds through counter-pressure. Often just termed Hex.
Ice axe	HRST	
A screw used to protect a climb over steep ice or for setting up a crevasse rescue system. The strongest and most reliable is the modern tubular ice screw which ranges in length from 18 to 23 cm. A type of mechanical ascender. To ascend a rope using a mechanical ascender. Knots Climbers rely on many different knots for anchoring oneself to a mountain, joining two ropes together, slings for climbing up the rope, etc. Lead A form of climbing in which the climber places anchors and attaches the belay rope as they climb. Leader Fall A fall while Lead climbing. A fall from above the climber's last piece of protection. The falling leader will fall at least twice the distance back to her last piece, plus slack and rope stretch. A carabiner with a locking gate, to prevent accidental release of the rope. Mantle A move used to surmount a ledge or feature in the rock in the absence of any useful holds directly above. It involves pushing down on a ledge or feature instead of pulling down. In ice climbing, a mantle is done by moving the hands from the shaft to the top of the ice tool and pushing down on the head of the tool. The external covering of a climbing rope. Climbing ropes use kernmentle construction consisting of a kern (or core) for strength and an external sheath called the mantle MACK Marine Assault Climbers Kit. Contains the equipment necessary for 8 TRSTs and/or Assault Climbers. MCWIK Marine Cold Weather Infantry Kit. Consists of a sled/tent/stove system along with other cold weather team equipment. Move Application of a specific climbing technique to progress on a climb. Multi-pitch climbing. Climbing on routes that are too long for a single belay rope Munter hitch A simple hitch that is often used for belaying without a mechanical belay device. Otherwise known as an Italian hitch or a Friction hitch. Permanent granular ice formed by repeated freeze-thwe cycles. No-hand rest. An entirely leg-supported resting position during climbing that does not require hands on the rock	HRST Kit	Equipment used in Helicopter HRST Operations
drewasse rescue system. The strongest and most reliable is the modern tubular ice screw which ranges in length from 18 to 23 cm. A type of mechanical ascender. To ascend a rope using a mechanical ascender. Knots Climbers rely on many different knots for anchoring oneself to a mountain, joining two ropes together, slings for climbing up the rope, etc. Lead A form of climbing in which the climber places anchors and attaches the belay rope as they climb. Leader Fall A fall while Lead climbing. A fall from above the climber's last piece of protection. The falling leader will fall at least twice the distance back to her last piece, plus slack and rope stretch. Locking Carabiner Mantle A move used to surmount a ledge or feature in the rock in the absence of any useful holds directly above. It involves pushing down on a ledge or feature instead of pulling down. In ice climbing, a mantle is done by moving the hands from the shaft to the top of the ice tool and pushing down on the head of the tool. The external covering of a climbing rope. Climbing ropes use kernmantle construction consisting of a kern (or core) for strength and an external sheath called the mantle MACK Marine Cold Weather Infantry Kit. Consists of a sled/tent/stove system along with other cold weather team equipment. MOVE Application of a specific climbing technique to progress on a climb. Multi-pitch climbing. Climbing on routes that are too long for a single belay rope Munter hitch A simple hitch that is often used for belaying without a mechanical belay device. Otherwise known as an Italian hitch or a Friction hitch. Névê Permanent granular ice formed by repeated freeze-thaw cycles. No-hand rest. An entirely leg-supported resting position during climbing that does not require hands on the rock Nut A metal wedge attached to a wire loop that is inserted into cracks for protection. See hexcentric.	Ice axe	A tool for safety and balance and arresting a fall.
Rnots Climbers rely on many different knots for anchoring oneself to a mountain, joining two ropes together, slings for climbing up the rope, etc. Lead A form of climbing in which the climber places anchors and attaches the belay rope as they climb. Leader Fall A fall while Lead climbing. A fall from above the climber's last piece of protection. The falling leader will fall at least twice the distance back to her last piece, plus slack and rope stretch. Locking Carabiner With a locking gate, to prevent accidental release of the rope. Mantle A move used to surmount a ledge or feature in the rock in the absence of any useful holds directly above. It involves pushing down on a ledge or feature instead of pulling down. In ice climbing, a mantle is done by moving the hands from the shaft to the top of the ice tool and pushing down on the head of the tool. The external covering of a climbing rope. Climbing ropes use kernmantle construction consisting of a kern (or core) for strength and an external sheath called the mantle MACK Marine Assault Climbers Kit. Contains the equipment necessary for 8 TRSTs and/or Assault Climbers. MCWIK Marine Cold Weather Infantry Kit. Consists of a sled/tent/stove system along with other cold weather team equipment. Move Application of a specific climbing technique to progress on a climb. Multi-pitch climbing. Climbing on routes that are too long for a single belay rope Munter hitch A simple hitch that is often used for belaying without a mechanical belay device. Otherwise known as an Italian hitch or a Friction hitch. Névê Permanent granular ice formed by repeated freeze-thaw cycles. No-hand rest. An entirely leg-supported resting position during climbing that does not require hands on the rock Nut A metal wedge attached to a wire loop that is inserted into cracks for protection. See hexcentric.	Ice screw	crevasse rescue system. The strongest and most reliable is the modern tubular ice screw which ranges in length from 18 to 23 cm.
Lead Climbing A form of climbing in which the climber places anchors and attaches the belay rope as they climb. Leader Fall A fall while Lead climbing. A fall from above the climber's last piece of protection. The falling leader will fall at least twice the distance back to her last piece, plus slack and rope stretch. Locking Carabiner A carabiner with a locking gate, to prevent accidental release of the rope. A move used to surmount a ledge or feature in the rock in the absence of any useful holds directly above. It involves pushing down on a ledge or feature instead of pulling down. In ice climbing, a mantle is done by moving the hands from the shaft to the top of the ice tool and pushing down on the head of the tool. The external covering of a climbing rope. Climbing ropes use kernmantle construction consisting of a kerm (or core) for strength and an external sheath called the mantle MACK Marine Assault Climbers Kit. Contains the equipment necessary for 8 TRSTs and/or Assault Climbers. MCWIK Marine Cold Weather Infantry Kit. Consists of a sled/tent/stove system along with other cold weather team equipment. MOVE Application of a specific climbing technique to progress on a climb. Multi-pitch climbing. Climbing on routes that are too long for a single belay rope Munter hitch A simple hitch that is often used for belaying without a mechanical belay device. Otherwise known as an Italian hitch or a Friction hitch. Névê Permanent granular ice formed by repeated freeze-thaw cycles. No-hand rest. An entirely leg-supported resting position during climbing that does not require hands on the rock Nut A metal wedge attached to a wire loop that is inserted into cracks for protection. See hexcentric.	Jumar	
Leader Fall A fall while Lead climbing. A fall from above the climber's last piece of protection. The falling leader will fall at least twice the distance back to her last piece, plus slack and rope stretch. Locking carabiner Mantle A move used to surmount a ledge or feature in the rock in the absence of any useful holds directly above. It involves pushing down on a ledge or feature instead of pulling down. In ice climbing, a mantle is done by moving the hands from the shaft to the top of the ice tool and pushing down on the head of the tool. The external covering of a climbing rope. Climbing ropes use kernmantle construction consisting of a kern (or core) for strength and an external sheath called the mantle MACK Marine Assault Climbers Kit. Contains the equipment necessary for 8 TRSTs and/or Assault Climbers. MCWIK Marine Cold Weather Infantry Kit. Consists of a sled/tent/stove system along with other cold weather team equipment. MOVE Application of a specific climbing technique to progress on a climb. Multi-pitch climbing. Climbing on routes that are too long for a single belay rope Munter hitch A simple hitch that is often used for belaying without a mechanical belay device. Otherwise known as an Italian hitch or a Friction hitch. Névê Permanent granular ice formed by repeated freeze-thaw cycles. No-hand rest. An entirely leg-supported resting position during climbing that does not require hands on the rook Nut A metal wedge attached to a wire loop that is inserted into cracks for protection. See hexcentric.	Knots	mountain, joining two ropes together, slings for climbing up the rope,
Leader Fall A fall while Lead climbing. A fall from above the climber's last piece of protection. The falling leader will fall at least twice the distance back to her last piece, plus slack and rope stretch. Locking carabiner A carabiner with a locking gate, to prevent accidental release of the rope. Mantle A move used to surmount a ledge or feature in the rock in the absence of any useful holds directly above. It involves pushing down on a ledge or feature instead of pulling down. In ice climbing, a mantle is done by moving the hands from the shaft to the top of the ice tool and pushing down on the head of the tool. The external covering of a climbing rope. Climbing ropes use kernmantle construction consisting of a kern (or core) for strength and an external sheath called the mantle MACK Marine Assault Climbers Kit. Contains the equipment necessary for 8 TRSTs and/or Assault Climbers. MCWIK Marine Cold Weather Infantry Kit. Consists of a sled/tent/stove system along with other cold weather team equipment. Move Application of a specific climbing technique to progress on a climb. Multi-pitch climbing. Climbing on routes that are too long for a single belay rope Munter hitch A simple hitch that is often used for belaying without a mechanical belay device. Otherwise known as an Italian hitch or a Friction hitch. Névê Permanent granular ice formed by repeated freeze-thaw cycles. No-hand rest. An entirely leg-supported resting position during climbing that does not require hands on the rock Nut A metal wedge attached to a wire loop that is inserted into cracks for protection. See hexcentric.		A form of climbing in which the climber places anchors and attaches the
of protection. The falling leader will fall at least twice the distance back to her last piece, plus slack and rope stretch. Locking	_	belay rope as they climb.
Mantle A move used to surmount a ledge or feature in the rock in the absence of any useful holds directly above. It involves pushing down on a ledge or feature instead of pulling down. In ice climbing, a mantle is done by moving the hands from the shaft to the top of the ice tool and pushing down on the head of the tool. The external covering of a climbing rope. Climbing ropes use kernmantle construction consisting of a kern (or core) for strength and an external sheath called the mantle MACK Marine Assault Climbers Kit. Contains the equipment necessary for 8 TRSTs and/or Assault Climbers. MCWIK Marine Cold Weather Infantry Kit. Consists of a sled/tent/stove system along with other cold weather team equipment. Move Application of a specific climbing technique to progress on a climb. Multi-pitch climbing. Climbing on routes that are too long for a single belay rope Munter hitch A simple hitch that is often used for belaying without a mechanical belay device. Otherwise known as an Italian hitch or a Friction hitch. Névê Permanent granular ice formed by repeated freeze-thaw cycles. No-hand rest. An entirely leg-supported resting position during climbing that does not require hands on the rock Nut A metal wedge attached to a wire loop that is inserted into cracks for protection. See hexcentric.	Leader Fall	of protection. The falling leader will fall at least twice the
of any useful holds directly above. It involves pushing down on a ledge or feature instead of pulling down. In ice climbing, a mantle is done by moving the hands from the shaft to the top of the ice tool and pushing down on the head of the tool. The external covering of a climbing rope. Climbing ropes use kernmantle construction consisting of a kern (or core) for strength and an external sheath called the mantle MACK Marine Assault Climbers Kit. Contains the equipment necessary for 8 TRSTs and/or Assault Climbers. MCWIK Marine Cold Weather Infantry Kit. Consists of a sled/tent/stove system along with other cold weather team equipment. Move Application of a specific climbing technique to progress on a climb. Multi-pitch climbing. Climbing on routes that are too long for a single belay rope Munter hitch A simple hitch that is often used for belaying without a mechanical belay device. Otherwise known as an Italian hitch or a Friction hitch. Névê Permanent granular ice formed by repeated freeze-thaw cycles. No-hand rest. An entirely leg-supported resting position during climbing that does not require hands on the rock Nut A metal wedge attached to a wire loop that is inserted into cracks for protection. See hexcentric.		
TRSTs and/or Assault Climbers. MCWIK Marine Cold Weather Infantry Kit. Consists of a sled/tent/stove system along with other cold weather team equipment. Move Application of a specific climbing technique to progress on a climb. Multi-pitch climbing. Climbing on routes that are too long for a single belay rope Munter hitch A simple hitch that is often used for belaying without a mechanical belay device. Otherwise known as an Italian hitch or a Friction hitch. Névê Permanent granular ice formed by repeated freeze-thaw cycles. No-hand rest. An entirely leg-supported resting position during climbing that does not require hands on the rock Nut A metal wedge attached to a wire loop that is inserted into cracks for protection. See hexcentric.	Mantle	of any useful holds directly above. It involves pushing down on a ledge or feature instead of pulling down. In ice climbing, a mantle is done by moving the hands from the shaft to the top of the ice tool and pushing down on the head of the tool. The external covering of a climbing rope. Climbing ropes use kernmantle construction consisting of a kern (or core) for strength and an external sheath called the
along with other cold weather team equipment. Application of a specific climbing technique to progress on a climb. Multi-pitch climbing. Climbing on routes that are too long for a single belay rope Munter hitch A simple hitch that is often used for belaying without a mechanical belay device. Otherwise known as an Italian hitch or a Friction hitch. Névê Permanent granular ice formed by repeated freeze-thaw cycles. No-hand rest. An entirely leg-supported resting position during climbing that does not require hands on the rock Nut A metal wedge attached to a wire loop that is inserted into cracks for protection. See hexcentric.	MACK	
Move Application of a specific climbing technique to progress on a climb. Multi-pitch climbing. Climbing on routes that are too long for a single belay rope Munter hitch A simple hitch that is often used for belaying without a mechanical belay device. Otherwise known as an Italian hitch or a Friction hitch. Névê Permanent granular ice formed by repeated freeze-thaw cycles. No-hand rest. An entirely leg-supported resting position during climbing that does not require hands on the rock Nut A metal wedge attached to a wire loop that is inserted into cracks for protection. See hexcentric.	MCWIK	Marine Cold Weather Infantry Kit. Consists of a sled/tent/stove system along with other cold weather team equipment.
belay device. Otherwise known as an Italian hitch or a Friction hitch. Névê Permanent granular ice formed by repeated freeze-thaw cycles. No-hand rest. An entirely leg-supported resting position during climbing that does not require hands on the rock Nut A metal wedge attached to a wire loop that is inserted into cracks for protection. See hexcentric.	Move	Application of a specific climbing technique to progress on a climb. Multi-pitch climbing. Climbing on routes that are too long for a
rest. An entirely leg-supported resting position during climbing that does not require hands on the rock Nut A metal wedge attached to a wire loop that is inserted into cracks for protection. See hexcentric.	Munter hitch	
protection. See hexcentric.	Névê	rest. An entirely leg-supported resting position during climbing that
Pickets Long, tubular rods driven into snow to provide a quick anchor.	Nut	
	Pickets	Long, tubular rods driven into snow to provide a quick anchor.

	T
Pitch	In the strictest climbing definition, a pitch is considered one rope length (50-60 meters). However, in guide books and route descriptions, a pitch is the portion of a climb between two belay points.
Piton	A flat or bent metal blade of steel which incorporates a clipping hole for a carabiner in its body. A piton is typically used in "aid-climbing" and is hammered into a thin crack in the rock.
Plunge step	An aggressive step pattern for descending on hard or steep angle snow.
Protection	Process of setting equipment or anchors for safety. Equipment or anchors used for preventing falls. Commonly known as Pro.
Prusik	A knot used for ascending a rope. It is named after Dr Karl Prusik, the Austrian mountaineer who developed this knot in 1931. To use a Prusik knot for ascending a rope.
Quickdraws	Quickdraws (draws, as referred to by most climbers) are used by climbers to attach ropes to bolt anchors or protection. They allow the rope to run-through with minimal friction.
Rack	The part of a harness from which equipment is hung, consisting of several stiff plastic loops attached to the waistband. The set of equipment carried up a climb.
Rappel	The process by which a climber may descend on a fixed rope using a friction device. Also known as Abseil or roping down.
Rest step	Energy-saving technique where unweighted leg is rested between each forward step.
Rope	Climbing ropes typically consist of a core of long twisted fibers and an outer sheath of woven colored fibers (referred to as kernmantle construction). The core provides most of the tensile strength, while the sheath is a durable layer that protects the core and gives the rope desirable handling characteristics. The ropes used for climbing can be divided into two classes: Dynamic ropes and static ropes.
Route	The path of a particular climb, or a predefined set of moves.
Runner	Another term for sling.
Runout	The span between two points of protection. A long portion of a route without adequate protection.
Saddle	A high pass between two peaks, larger than a col.
Scrambling	Non-technical climbing.
Scree	Loose, broken rock that climbers can never avoid.
Second	A climber who follows the lead, or first, climber. (TRST)
Self-Arrest	The act of planting your ice axe into the snow during a rapid, uncontrolled descent in order to make an emergency stop.
Serac	A large ice tower.
SKED	A stretcher system manufactured by Skedco Inc. and utilized by the MCMWTC instructor staff to evacuate casualties.
SLCD	Abbreviation for spring loaded camming device, a type of protection device. These are better known by the term cam.
Sling	Webbing sewn, or tied, into a loop.
Smearing	To use friction on the sole of the climbing shoe, in the absence of any useful footholds.
Snow fluke	An angled aluminum plate attached to a metal cable. The fluke is buried into snow, typically used as a deadman anchor.
Solo climbing	Climbing without any protection (free solo) or setting and cleaning one's own protection on an ascent.

Static	
	Of a style of climbing or specific move, not dynamic.
Static rope	A non-elastic rope. Compare with dynamic rope.
Sticht	A belay device consisting of a flat plate with a pair of slots. Named
plate	after the inventor Franz Sticht.
Stopper	A wedge-shaped nut. A knot used to prevent the rope running through a piece of equipment.
Summit	The high point of a mountain or peak. To reach such a high point.
Swami Wrap	A kind of proto- climbing harnesses consisting or a long length of tubular webbing wrapped several times around the climbers body and secured with a water knot.
TRST	Tactical Rope Suspension Techniques and/or Tactical Rope Suspension Technician.
Top rope	To belay from a fixed anchor point above the climb.
Traverse	To climb in a horizontal direction. A feature of a rock that allows
	relatively easy progress in a horizontal direction. A Tyrolean
	traverse is crossing a chasm using a rope anchored at both ends. A
	pendulum traverse involves swinging from a protection point.
"V"-grade	A technical grading system for bouldering problems, invented by John Sherman.
Webbing	Hollow and flat rope, mainly used to make runners and slings.
Wires	A slang term for nuts.
Yosemite	A numerical system for rating the difficulty of walks, hikes, and
Decimal	climbs in the United States. The rock climbing (5.x) portion of the
System	scale is the most common climb grading system used in the US. The
	scale runs from 5.0 to 5.15a (as of 2005)
Z-pulley	A particular configuration of rope, anchors, and pulleys typically used
	to extricate a climber after falling into a crevasse.

APPENDIX G

CLIMBING CLASSIFICATION AND GRADES

The Yosemite Decimal System

The Yosemite Decimal System consists of five general classes; the fifth being subdivided with a decimal notation, but it is generally accepted that some ratings are too high or too low.

The class of a route is derived from its "crux" or hardest move. If you hike a class 2 trail from point A to point B, and are required to scale a 20 foot wall of rock (class 4) along the way, then you hiked a class 4 trail regardless of the normal exposure.

Here are the five classes, where each bullet represents a different opinion as to what the class actually represents.

- Class 1: The movement is on a trail.
- Class 2: The movement is cross-country or across easy boulder fields where route-finding is necessary.
- Class 4: The movement is on steep terrain and requires a roped belay.
- Class 5: Involves technical moves and requires protective hardware. This is further broken down to numbers 5.0-5.13. 5.0 means that there are ample foot/handholds. 5.12 is vertical. 5.13 is vertical with areas of overhanging rock. (See 5th Class Yosemite Decimal System below)
- **Class 6:** The rope bears the climber's weight on purpose, rope ladders and equipment used to aid.

5th Class Yosemite Decimal System

The experienced climber, having accomplished or attempted free climbs of varying degrees of difficulty in the YDS class 5 range, gains an understanding of the level of difficulty involved.

To the beginner, however, these ratings are simply a set of numbers, understandably, easy if rated 5.0 and impossible if rated 5.13. To provide a slightly better understanding within the class for the beginner the following tongue-in-cheek description is provided:

- 5.0 to 5.4: There are two hand and two footholds for every move; the holds become progressively smaller as the number increases.
- 5.5 to 5.6: The two hand and two footholds are there, obvious to the experienced, but not necessarily so to the beginner.
 - 5.7: The move is missing one hand or foothold.
 - 5.8: The move is missing two holds of the four, or missing only one but is very strenuous.
 - 5.9: The move has only one reasonable hold which may be for either a foot or a hand.
 - 5.1: No hand or footholds.
- 5.11 to 5.13: Beyond the ability of most people.

Ratings are established on lead; the follower has a somewhat easier climb. The standard trained to for military climbing on 5^{th} class terrain is between 5.0 - 5.6.

Ice Ratings

Ice ratings can be nebulous, because the medium constantly changes. Because of these changing conditions, every ascent could be called a first ascent. When a waterfall first freezes each season, the ice is thin and the climbing desperate. As the ice thickens, it becomes easier to climb and protect. In early morning it's probably cold and brittle, though it might turn to perfect plastic ice by mid-morning, and slush by afternoon. If it's a popular route, it'll get pock-marked so it becomes like a pegboard.

Other factors change a route from year to year, like amount of runoff, prevailing temperatures, and wind. Far more important than a rating in a guidebook is the climb's appearance, the condition of the ice, the temperature, and the climbers.

Technical Ratings

The ice rating system in North America has three categories: WI for water ice, AI for alpine ice, and M for mixed.

Ice grades currently go from 1 to 7: These numbers apply to Water Ice (WI), Alpine Ice (AI), or Mixed (M) terrain and describe the hardest pitch on the route. The range of difficulty within each rating is broad. In general, the technical difficulty of a climb is based on the usual conditions encountered. Since the technical difficulty of a climb depends directly from the quality of the ice, be aware that conditions outside the average will affect the rating.

- 1. Walking up with crampons: No tools required.
- 2. Only one tool is needed: A pitch of 60°-70° ice, reasonably consistent, with few short steep steps. Good protection and belays.
- 3. Beginner should probably use a top rope: Sustained 70°-80° ice, usually thick and solid. May contain short, steep sections, but will have good resting places and offer good protection and belays.
- 4. Approaches vertical: Sustained 75°-85° ice, separated by good belays, or a less steep pitch with significant vertical sections. Generally good quality ice, offering satisfactory protection.
- 5. Extended sections of vertical: A noticeably more strenuous pitch of good but steep (85°-90°) ice.
- **6. Steep and technical:** The ice may not be of top quality and protection may be poor. A high level of skill and strength is required, marginal protection, so as difficulty increases, so does the danger.
- 7. Steep, technical, and often dangerous: Marginal pick placements usually make this dangerous. A very steep, possibly overhanging, strenuous pitch with few resting places.

Grade Ratings

- I. A short climb with a short approach and easy descent. Time required is an hour, or two.
- II. A 1 or 2 pitch climb with a short approach and easy descent by rappelling, or down climbing. Time required is a few hours.
- III. A multi-pitch route at a low elevation which may take several hours, or a route with a long approach that requires good winter travel skills, or a route subject to occasional winter hazards. The descent is often by rappelling. Time required is half a day.
- IV. A multi-pitch route at higher elevations, or a remote route which requires mountaineering and winter travel skills. May be subject to objective hazards (i.e., avalanche, or rock fall). The descent may be difficult, and involve rappelling. Time required is a most of a day.
- V. A long climb on a high mountain face that requires significant competence as well as commitment. The climb is subject to objective hazards in addition to bad weather. The approach and descent may be long and difficult. Time required is a long day or two.
- VI. A long, multi-pitch route on a high alpine face. The climb may include winter alpine climbing logistical problems in addition to severe objective hazards (i.e., avalanche, falling seracs, high elevation, and remoteness). Time required is many days.